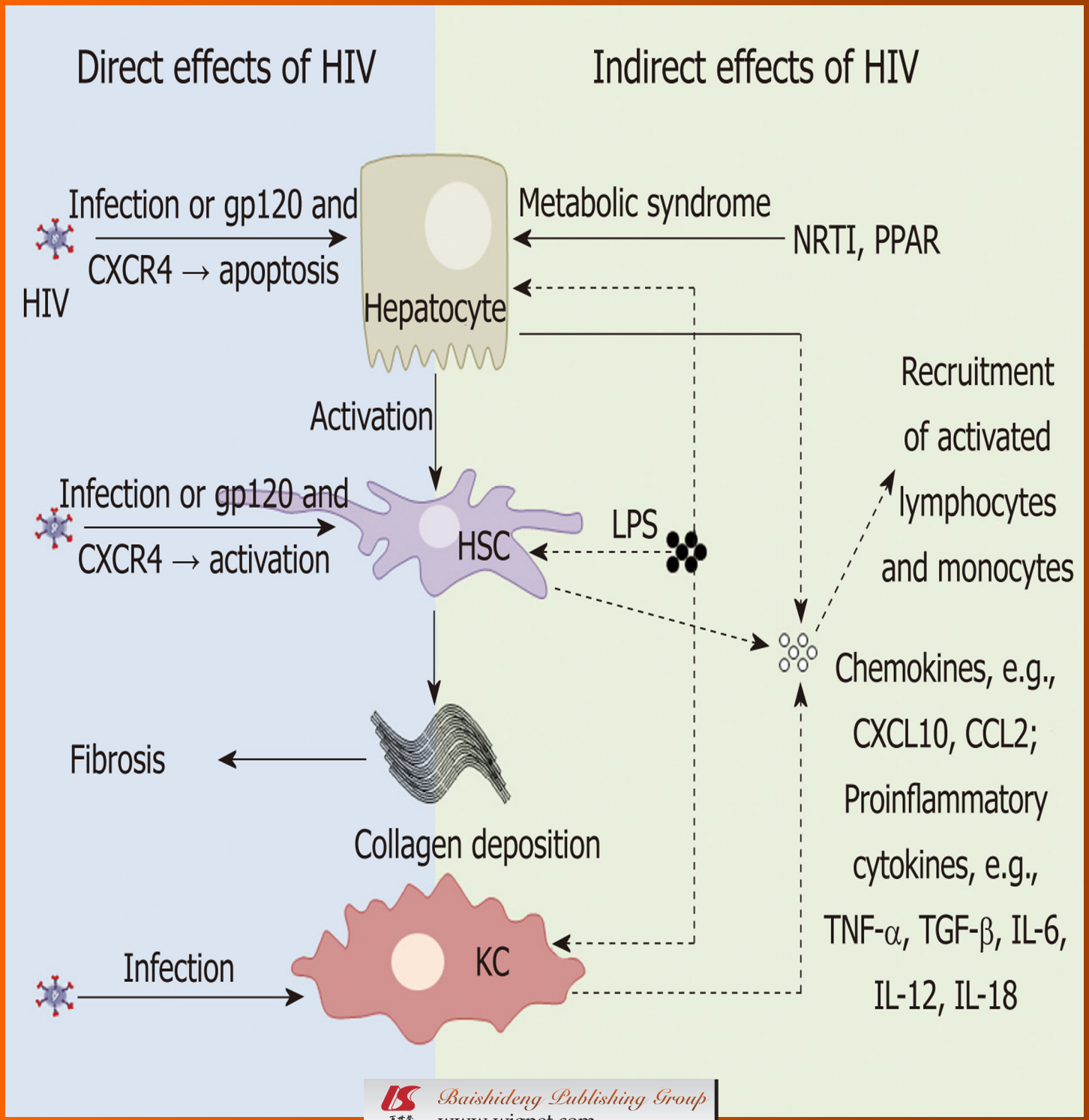
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

World Journal of *Hepatology*

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): 50-109



Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of Hepatology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of hepatology

Editorial Board

2009-2013

The *World Journal of Hepatology* Editorial Board consists of 573 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in hepatology. They are from 46 countries, including Argentina (4), Australia (7), Austria (2), Bangladesh (1), Belgium (3), Botswana (2), Brazil (8), Brunei Darussalam (1), Bulgaria (1), Canada (10), Chile (1), China (89), Denmark (1), Egypt (3), Finland (1), France (15), Gambia (1), Germany (28), Greece (8), Hungary (3), India (20), Ireland (1), Israel (7), Italy (65), Japan (45), Malaysia (1), Mexico (4), Netherlands (4), Pakistan (2), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Philippines (1), Romania (1), Saudi Arabia (1), Singapore (4), South Korea (17), Spain (22), Sri Lanka (1), Sudan (1), Switzerland (2), Thailand (6), Tunisia (2), Turkey (13), United Kingdom (17), United States (144), and Venezuela (1).

Chiranjib Chakraborty, *Beijing*
Stephen Lam Chan, *Hong Kong*
George G Chen, *Hong Kong*
Min-Shan Chen, *Guangzhou*
Yang Cheng, *Shanghai*
Siu Tim Cheung, *Hong Kong*
Thomas YC Cheung, *Hong Kong*
Yick-Pang Ching, *Hong Kang*
William Chi-shing Cho, *Hong Kong*
Chui Chung-hin, *Hong Kong*
Shuang-Suo Dang, *Xi'an*
Yi-Tao Ding, *Nanjing*
Jian-Gao Fan, *Shanghai*
Yuen Man Fung, *Hong Kang*
Zuo-Jiong Gong, *Wuhan*
Tian-Quan Han, *Shanghai*
Jin-Yang He, *Guangzhou*
Garrett CL Ho, *Hong Kong*
Ji-Ming Hu, *Wuhan*
Can-Hua Huang, *Chengdu*
Zhi-Yong Huang, *Wuhan*
Jian-Hui Jiang, *Changsha*
Dong-Yan Jin, *Hong Kong*
Hsiang-Fu Kung, *Hong Kong*
Lai PBS Lai, *Hong Kong*
Wan YJ Lau, *Hong Kong*
Nancy WY Leung, *Hong Kong*
Jin-Qing Li, *Guangzhou*
Li-Ying Li, *Beijing*
Shu-Chen Li, *Harbin*
Xin-Wei Li, *Shanghai*
Yu-Yuan Li, *Guangzhou*
En-Qi Liu, *Xi'an*
Yin-Kun Liu, *Shanghai*
Chung-Mau Lo, *Hong Kong*
Lun-Gen Lu, *Shanghai*
Ming-De Lu, *Guangzhou*
John M Luk, *Hong Kong*
Guang-Hua Luo, *Changzhou*
Shuang Mei, *Shanghai*
Kelvin KC Ng, *Hong Kong*
Qin Ning, *Wuhan*
Qin Pan, *Shanghai*
Qi-Jun Qian, *Shanghai*
Jian-Min Qin, *Shanghai*
Xian-Jun Qu, *Jinan*
Xue-Ying Sun, *Harbin*
Qin Su, *Beijing*
Wu-Yi Sun, *Hefei*
Hui-Ru Tang, *Wuhan*
Peng Tao, *Nanning*
Eric WC Tse, *Hong Kong*
Bin Wang, Weifang
Xiao-Zhong Wang, *Fuzhou*
Xiu-Jie Wang, *Chengdu*
Zhen-Xia Wang, *Huhhot*
Grace LH Wong, *Hong Kong*
Nathalie Wong, *Hong Kong*
Xiong-Zhi Wu, *Tianjin*
De-Xiang Xu, *Hefei*
Rui-An Xu, *Quanzhou*
Xun-Di Xu, *Changsha*
Xiao Yang, *Beijing*
Zhen-Fan Yang, *Hong Kong*
Boon Hun Yong, *Hong Kong*
Ting-He Yu, *Chengdu*
Benny CY Zee, *Hong Kong*
Jia-Ning Zhang, *Dalian*
Xiao-Dong Zhang, *Tianjin*
Xiao-Lan Zhang, *Shijiazhuang*
Xiao-Yan Zhang, *Shanghai*
Hong-Chuan Zhao, *Hefei*
Xiao-Ping Zhao, *Beijing*
Jiang-Fan Zhu, *Shanghai*
Yi-Ping Zou, *Beijing*

Denmark

Henning Grønbæk, *Aarhus*

Egypt

Nabil Mohie Abdel-Hamid, *Minia*
Laila AF Eissa, *Mansoura*
Mona Mostafa Fahmy Nosseir, *Giza*

Finland

Thomas Kietzmann, *Oulu*

France

Aramando Abergel, *Clenmont -Ferrant*
Henri Bismuth, *Villejuif Cedex*
Ana CFN Cardoso, *Paris*
Nicolas Chignard, *Paris*
Claude C de Fromentel, *Lyon*
Zdenko Herceg, *Lyon*
Nathalie Janel, *Paris*
Victor de Ledinghen, *Pessac cedex*
Antoinette Lemoine, *Villejuif*
Marcellin Patrick, *Clichy*
Raoul Poupon, *Paris*
Rodrigue Rossignol, *Bordeaux cedex*
Christian Trépo, *Lyon*
Dominique A Vuitton, *Besancon*
Virginie Wautot, *Pierre Benite*

Gambia

Maimuna Ebirunkeh Mendy, *Banjul*

Germany

Thomas Bock, *Tuebingen*
Ali Canbay, *Essen*
Enrico Narciso De Toni, *München*
Joachim Drevs, *Freiburg*
Volker Fendrich, *Marburg*
Peter R Galle, *Mainz*
Erich Gulbins, *Essen*
Roland Kaufmann, *Jena*
Sebastian Hinz, *Kiel*
Philipp Kobbe, *Aachen*
Michael Kremer, *Heidelberg*
Christian Liedtke, *Aachen*
Martin Loss, *Regensburg*
Arun Kumar Mankan, *Munich*
Lars Müller, *MD, Kiel*
Michael D Menger, *Saarbrucken*
Andreas K Nussler, *Munich*
Margarete Odenthal, *Koeln*
Claus Petersen, *Hannover*
Andrej Potthoff, *Hannover*
Thomas Pusl, *München*
Elke Roeb, *Giessen*
Frank Tacke, *Aachen*
Stefan Rose-John, *Kiel*
Andreas Teufel, *Mainz*
Lothar Thomas, *Frankfurt*
Jens JW Tischendorf, *Aachen*
Arndt Vogel, *Hannover*

Greece

Alex P Betrosian, *Athens*
Spiros G Delis, *Athens*
Ioannis Diamantis, *Athens*
Papandreou Dimitrios, *Mela*
Elias A Kouroumalis, *Crete*
George Papatheodoridis, *Athens*
Stamatios E. Theocharis, *Athens*

Hungary

Gábor Bánhegyi, *Budapest*
Subhamay Ghosh, *Pécs*
Peter Nagy, *Budapest*

India

Anjali Deepak Amarapurkar, *Mumbai*
DN Amararpurkar, *Mumbai*
Runu Chakravarty, *Kolkata*
Pronobesh Chattopadhyay, *Moradabad*
Puneet Chopra, *Gurgaon Haryana*
Tanya Das, *Kolkata*
Radha Krishan Dhiman, *Chandigarh*
Ajay Duseja, *Chandigarh*
Devendra K Gupta, *New Delhi*
P Kar, *New Delhi*
Sudhir Kumar, *Lucknow*
Vijay Kumar, *New Delhi*
Anoop Misra, *New Delhi*
Devendra Parmar, *Lucknow*
Rajendra Prasad, *Chandigarh*
K Rajeshwari, *New Delhi*
Pallu Reddanna, *Hyderabad*
Barjesh Chander Sharma, *New Delhi*
Sarman Singh, *New Delhi*
Ajith TA, *Thrissur*

Ireland

Matthew William Lawless, *Dublin*

Israel

Yaron Ilan, *Jerusalem*

Yaakov Maor Kendler, *Tel Hashomer*
Ran Oren, MD, *Tel Aviv*
Amir Shlomai, *Modiin*
Rifaat Safadi, *Jerusalem*
Shira Zelber Sagi, *Tel Aviv*
Yehuda Julius Shoenfeld, *Tel Hahsomer*

Italy

Luca Aasaloni, *Bologna*
Giovanni Addolorato, *Rome*
Luigi E Adinolfi, *Naples*
Pietro Andreone, *Bologna*
M Appetecchia, *Rome*
Antonio Ascione, *Napoli*
Ferruccio Bonino, *Milano*
Bruno D Bruno, *Benevento*
Savino Bruno, *Milano*
Melchiorre Cervello, *Palermo*
Claudio Chiesa, *Rome*
Stefano Colagrande, *Firenze*
Massimo G Colombo, *Milan*
Samuele De Minicis, *Montegranaro*
Alessandro Vitale, *alessandro*
Fabio Farinati, *Padova*
Paolo Feltracco, *Padova*
Domenico Ferri, *Bari*
Amalia Gastaldelli, *Pisa*
Domenico Girelli, *Verona*
Fernando Goglia, *Benevento*
Alessandro Grasso, *Savona*
Ignazio Grattagliano, *Bari*
Pietro Invernizzi, *Milan*
Francesco Izzo, *Naples*
Amedeo Lonardo, *Modena*
Malaguarnera Lucia, *Trecastagni*
Massimo Di Maio, *Rossano*
Melania Manco, *Rome*
Andrea Mancuso, *Palermo*
F Marotta, *Milano*
Fabio Marra, *Florence*
Roberto Mazzanti, *Florence*
Giulia Morsica, *Milan*
Antonio Moschetta, *Bari*
Massimo Negrini, *Ferrara*
Andrea Nicolini, *Pisa*
Giuseppe R Nigri, *Rome*
Valerio Nobili, *Rome*
Valentina Pallottini, *Rome*
Adriano M Pellicelli, *Rome*
Marcello Persico, *Naples*
Massimo Pinzani, *Firenze*
Giovanni Polimeni, *Messina*
Camillo Porta, *Pavia*
Piero Portincasa, *Bari*
Emilio Quaia, *Trieste*
Giuseppe Remuzzi, *Bergamo*
Domenico Ribatti, *Bari*
Massimo Roncalli, *Rozzano*
Carlo Sabbà, *Bari*
Orazio Schillaci, *Rome*
Gaetano Serviddio, *Foggia*
Aurelio Sonzogni, *Bergamo*
Paolo Sorrentino, *Salerno*
Enea Spada, *Roma*
Giovanni Tarantino, *Naples*
Luciano Tarantino, *Naples*
Claudio Tiribelli, *Trieste*
Pierluigi Toniutto, *Udine*
Pietro Vajro, *Naples*
Luca Vigano, *Torino*

Japan

Yuichiro Eguchi, *Saga*
Munechika Enjoji, *Fukuoka*
Jiro Fujimoto, *Osaka*
Atsushi Hosui, *Osaka*
Kazuo Ikeda, *Nagoya*
Toru Ishikawa, *Niigata*
Yoshiaki Iwasaki, *Okayama*
Satoru Kakizaki, *Gunma*
Naoya Kato, *Tokyo*
Takumi Kawaguchi, *Kurume*
Kiminori Kimura, *Tokyo*
Tsuneo Kitamura, *Chiba*
Keiichi Kubota, *Tochigi*
Sabina Mahmood, *Okayama*
Hitoshi Maruyama, *Chiba*
Sachiko Matsuhashi, *Saga*
Toshihiro Mitaka, *Sapporo*
Eiji Miyoshi, *Yamada-oka Suita*
Zenichi Morise, *Toyoake Aichi*
Ryuichi Morisihita, *Osaka*
Yoshiki Murakami, *Kyoto*
Satoru Murata, *Tokyo*
Atsushi Nakajima, *Kanagawa*
Yasuni Nakanuma, *Kanazawa*
Waka Ohishi, *Hiroshima*
Morikazu Onji, *Matsuyama*
Toshiji Saibara, *Nankoku*
Hiroaki Shiba, *Tokyo*
Ikuo Shoji, *Hyogo*
Ryo Sudo, *Yokohama*
Yoshio Sumida, *Nara*
Shinji Tanaka, *Tokyo*
Takuji Tanaka, *Gifu*
Akihiko Tsuchida, *Tokyo*
Takato Ueno, *Kurume*
Shinichi Ueno, *Kagoshima*
Kiyohito Yagi, *Osaka*
Yo-ichi Yamashita, *Hiroshima*
Teruyoshi Yanagita, *Saga*
Shuang-Qin Yi, *Kanazawa*
Hiroshi Yoshida, *Tokyo*
Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Nara*

Malaysia

Kamsiah Jaarin, *Kuala Lumpur*

Mexico

Norberto C Chavez-Tapia, *Tlalpan*
Javier Lizardi Cervera, *Tlalpan CP*
Saúl Villa-Treviño, *México DF*
Florencia V Vorackova, *México DF*

Netherlands

Robert Jacobus de Knegt, *Rotterdam*
TU Hoogenraad, *Heidelberglaan*
Maarten E Tushuizen, *MB Amsterdam*
Robert C Verdonk, *RB Groningen*

Pakistan

Syed Hamid Ali, *Karachi*
Huma IQ TI, *Islamabad*

Poland

Maria ES Lotowska, *Bialystok*

Portugal

Felix Dias Carvalho, *Porto*

Philippines

Janus P Ong, *Manila*

Romania

Eugen Georgescu, *Craiova*

Saudi Arabia

Ahmed Helmy, *Riyadh*

Singapore

Wei Ning Chen, *Singapore*
Si-Shen Feng, *Singapore*
Lang Zhuo, *Singapore*
Chun-Tao Wai, *Singapore*

South Korea

Sang Hoon Ahn, *Seoul*
Sun Pyo Hong, *Yongin*
Byung Ihn Choi, *Seoul*
Seok Joo Han, *Seoul*
Kyung Lib Jang, *Busan*
Bum-Joon Kim, *Seoul*
Dong Goo Kim, *Seoul*
Kyung Sik Kim, *Seoul*
Meehyein Kim, *Yongin*
Young Chul Kim, *Seoul*
Mi-Kyung Lee, *Jeonnam*
Young-Ik Lee, *Taejon*
Kwan-Kyu Park, *Daegu*
Hyunchul Rhim, *Seoul*
In Kyoung Lim, *Gyunggi-do*
Dae-Yeul Yu, *Daejeon*
Jong Won Yun, *Kyungbuk*

Spain

Jose AG Agundez, *Badajoz*
Maria Angeles, *Madrid*
Agustin Castiella, *Mendaro*
Ruben Ciria, *Cordoba*
Joan Clari, *Barcelona*
Maria Buti Ferret, *Barcelona*
Puri Fortes, *Pamplona*
Joan Genescà, *Barcelona*
María J Gómez-Lechón, *Valencia*
Arias Jaime, *Madrid*
Ángeles Pajares María, *Madrid*
Jordi Muntane, *Cordoba*
Jose JG Marin, *Salamanca*
Julia P Onsurbe, *Barcelona*
Albert Parés, *Barcelona*
Sonia Ramos, *Madrid*
Cristina Ripoll, *Madrid*
Isabel F Romero, *Barcelona*
Marta R Romero, *Salamanca*
Juan Macias Sanchez, *Sevilla*
Juan Sastre, *Valencia*
Manuel Vázquez-Carrera, *Barcelona*

Sri Lanka

EGD Shaman Rajindrajith, *Ragama*

Sudan

Hatim MY Mudawi, *Khartoum*

Switzerland

Beat Mullhaupt, *Zurich*
Maurer A Christoph, *Liestal*

Thailand

Nattiya Hirankarn, *Bangkok*
Somchai Pinlaor, *Khon Kaen*
Yong Poovorawan, *Bangkok*
Abhasnee Sobhonslidsuk, *Bangkok*
Chanitra Thuwajit, *Bangkok*
Sopit Wongkham, *Khon Kaen*

Tunisia

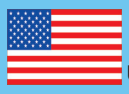
Olfa Bahri, *Tunis-Belvedere*
Chadli Dziri, *Tunis*

Turkey

Inci Alican, *Istanbul*
Ahmet Atessahin, *Elazig*
Yasemin Hatice Balaban, *Ankara*
Hayrullah Derici, MD, *Izmir*
Cigdem Ulukaya Durakbasa, *Istanbul*
Muhsin MM Harputluoglu, *Malatya*
Abdurrahman Kadayifci, *Gaziantep*
Adnan Kadayifci, *Antalya*
Ali Sazci, *Kocaeli*
Ilker Tasci, *Ankara*
Mehmet Yalniz, *Elazig*
Serkan Yener, *Izmir*
Yusuf Yilmaz, *Istanbul*

United Kingdom

Alastair David Burt, *Newcastle*
David O Cosgrove, *London*
Anil Dhawan, *London*
Indra Neil Guha, *Nottingham*
Phillip M Harrison, *London*
Hübscher SG Hübscher, *Birmingham*
Long R Jiao, *London*
AT Koulaouzidis, *Edinburgh*
Patricia Lalor, *Birmingham*
David A Lomas, *Cambridge*
Rajeshwar P Mookerjee, *London*
Gareth J Morris-Stiff, *Wales*
Kathryn L Nash, *Southampton*
Derek Anthony O'Reilly,
Christian P Selinge, *Bolton*
Konstantinos Tziomalos, *London*
Feng Wu, *Oxford*



United States

Gary A Abrams, *Montgomery*
Hassan H A-Kader, *Tucson*
Hans-Olov Adami, *Massachusetts*
Joseph Ahn, *Maywood*
Shannon Marie Bailey, *Alabama*
Numan Cem Balci, *St Louis MO*
Edmund J Bini, *New York*
Victor E Buckwold, *Frederick*
Roniel Cabrera, *Gainesville*
Guoqing Cao, *Indiana*
Disaya Chavalitdhamrong, *New York*
Chien-Shing Chen, *Loma Linda*
Fei Chen, *Morgantown*
Su Chen, *San Antonio*
Youhai H Chen, *Philadelphia*
Anne M Covey, *New York*
Mark J Czaja, *New York*
Srikanta Dash, *New Orleans*
Anthony JB Demetris, *Pittsburgh*
Sridevi Devaraj, *California*
Lisa Ross Dixon, *Gainesville*
Terrence M Donohue, *Omaha*
Q Ping Dou, *Detroit*
Murray N Ehrinpreis, *Detroit*
Marwan Ghazi Fakih, *Buffalo*
Shengyun Fang, *Maryland*
Claus J Fimmel, *Illinois*
Robert Anthony Fisher, *Virginia*
Samuel W French, *Torrance*
Phillip A Furman, *Princeton*
M Eric Gershwin, *California*
Jalal K Ghali, *Michigan*
Grace Liejun Guo, *Kansas City*
Dieter Haemmerich, *Charleston*
Young S Hahn, *Charlottesville*
Stephen A Harrison, *Texas*
Dee Harrison-Findik, *Nebraska*
Sidhartha Hazari, *Louisiana*
Thomas S Helling, *Jackson*
Alan W Hemming, *Florida*
Iryna S Hepburn, *Evans*
Ai-Xuan L Holterman, *Chicago*
Ke-Qin Hu, *California*
Guangcun Huang, *Ohio*
Wendong Huang, *California*
Rachel M Hudacko, *New Brunswick*
Michael John Jacobs, *Michigan*
Hartmut W Jaeschke, *Kansas City*
Ravi Jhaveri, *North Carolina*
Lynt B Johnson, *Washington*
Neil Louis Julie, *Bethesda*
Sanjay Kakar, *San Francisco*
Sanjeeva P Kalva, *Boston*
Jing X Kang, *Massachusetts*
Hetal Karsan, *Georgia*
Emmet B Keeffe, *California*
Nancy Ellen Kemeny, *New York*
Andrew Scott Kennedy, *Cary*
Kusum K Kharbanda, *Omaha*
David H Kirn, *California*
Hyam Lerner Leffert, *La Jolla*
Stacee Marie Lerret, *Milwaukee*
Fengzhi Li, *New York*
Wei Li, *Houston*
Shuang Liu, *Indiana*
Su Hao Lo, *Davis*
Daniel G Maluf, *Richmond*
Jose E Manautou, *Storrs*
Richard S Mangus, *Indiana*
Mary Ko Manibusan, *Virginia*
Paul Martin, *Miami,*
Jochen Mattner, *Ohio*
James A McCubrey, *North Carolina*
Valentina Medici, *Sacramento*
George Michalopoulos, *Pittsburgh*
Smruti R Mohanty, *Illinois*
John T Moore, *GlaxoSmithKline*
Ravi Murthy, *Texas*
Laura E Nagy, *Cleveland*
Sagar U Nigwekar, *Rochester*
Eileen M O'Reilly, *New York*
Kevin FS O'Carroll, *Hershey*
Melissa Kay Osborn, *Atlanta*
Helieh Saatara Oz, *Kentucky*
Igor P Pogribny, *Arkansas*
Nicholas C Popescu, *Bethesda Maryland*
Daniel S Pratt, *Boston*
Ratna B Ray, *Louis*
Nancy Reau, *Chicago*
Janardan K Reddy, *Chicago*
Martin J Ronis, *Little Rock*
Phillip Ruiz, *Florida*
Tanios B Saab, *Columbus*
Adnan Said, *Madison*
Neeraj Saxena, *Georgia*
Raymund R Saxena, *Minnesota*
Ann Scheimann, *Baltimore*
Timothy M Schmitt, *Charlottesville*
Bernd Schnabl, *La Jolla*
Kunwar Shailubhai, *Pennsylvania*
Muhammad Y Sheikh, *California*
Perry Shen, *Winston-Salem*
Viji Shridhar, *Rochester*
Shivendra D Shukla, *Missouri*
Ashwani K Singal, *Galveston*
Keshav K Singh, *New York*

WJH World Journal of Hepatology

Contents

Monthly Volume 4 Number 3 March 27, 2012

World Journal of Hepatology
Volume 4 Number 3 March 27, 2012

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Hepatology

ISSN
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
October 31, 2009

FREQUENCY
Monthly

EDITING
Editorial Board of *World Journal of Hepatology*
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381892
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjh@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
Masatoshi Kudo, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Kinki University School of Medicine, 377-2, Ohno-Higashi, Osaka-Sayama, 589-8511, Osaka, Japan

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Xing Wu, Assistant Director
World Journal of Hepatology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381892
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjh@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Room 1701, 17/F, Henan Building,
No.90 Jaffe Road, Wanchai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-31158812
Telephone: +852-58042046
E-mail: bpg@baishideng.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
March 27, 2012

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100316080002.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office/

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.50

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): 50-65
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

EDITORIAL

Hepatic encephalopathy: An approach to its multiple pathophysiological features

Juan Carlos Perazzo, Silvina Tallis, Amalia Delfante, Pablo Andrés Souto, Abraham Lemberg, Francisco Xavier Eizayaga, Salvador Romay

Juan Carlos Perazzo, Silvina Tallis, Amalia Delfante, Pablo Andrés Souto, Abraham Lemberg, Francisco Xavier Eizayaga, Salvador Romay, Laboratory of Portal Hypertension and Hepatic Encephalopathy, Pathophysiology, School of Pharmacy and Biochemistry, University of Buenos Aires, Junin 950, CP 1113, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Juan Carlos Perazzo, Silvina Tallis, Amalia Delfante, Pablo Andrés Souto, Francisco Xavier Eizayaga, Salvador Romay, Laboratory of Experimental Pathology, School of Medicine, University of Buenos Aires, J E Uriburu 950, CP 1114, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Salvador Romay, Clinical Unit, General Hospital I Pirovano, GCBA, Monroe 3555, CP 1430, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Author contributions: Perazzo JC, Tallis S, Delfante A and Souto PA wrote the paper; Lemberg A and Eizayaga FX revised the paper critically for important intellectual content; and Romay S and Perazzo JC designed and directed the work.

Correspondence to: Juan Carlos Perazzo, Professor, Laboratory of Portal Hypertension and Hepatic Encephalopathy, School of Pharmacy and Biochemistry, University of Buenos Aires, Junin 950, CP 1113, Buenos Aires, Argentina. perazzopat@gmail.com

Telephone: + 54-11-45083602 Fax: +54-11-49648368

Received: August 28, 2011 Revised: November 19, 2011
Accepted: February 24, 2012
Published online: March 27, 2012

Abstract

Hepatic encephalopathy (HE) is a neuropsychiatric complex syndrome, ranging from subtle behavioral abnormalities to deep coma and death. Hepatic encephalopathy emerges as the major complication of acute or chronic liver failure. Multiplicity of factors are involved in its pathophysiology, such as central and neuromuscular neurotransmission disorder, alterations in sleep patterns and cognition, changes in energy metabolism leading to cell injury, an oxidative/nitrosative state and a neuroinflammatory condition. Moreover, in acute HE, a condition of imminent threat of death is present due to a deleterious astrocyte swelling. In chronic HE, changes in calcium signaling, mitochondrial membrane potential and long term potential expression, N-methyl-D-aspartate-cGMP and peripheral benzodiazepine receptors alterations, and changes in the mRNA and protein expression and redistribution in the cerebral blood flow can be observed. The main molecule indicated as responsible for all these changes in HE is ammonia. There is no doubt that ammonia, a neurotoxic molecule, triggers or at least facilitates most of these changes. Ammonia plasma levels are increased two- to three-fold in patients with mild to moderate cirrhotic HE and up to ten-fold in patients with acute liver failure. Hepatic and inter-organ trafficking of ammonia and its metabolite, glutamine (GLN), lead to hyperammonemic conditions. Removal of hepatic ammonia is a differentiated work that includes the hepatocyte, through the urea cycle, converting ammonia into GLN *via* glutamine synthetase. Under pathological conditions, such as liver damage or liver blood by-pass, the ammonia plasma level starts to rise and the risk of HE developing is high. Knowledge of the pathophysiology of HE is rapidly expanding and identification of focally localized triggers has led the development of new possibilities for HE to be considered. This editorial will focus on issues where, to the best of our knowledge, more research is needed in order to clarify, at least partially, controversial topics.

Key words: Liver failure; Hepatic encephalopathy; Ammonia and central nervous system; Hyperammonemia

Peer reviewers: Canhua Huang, Professor, The State Key Lab of Biotherapy, Sichuan University, Chengdu 610041, Sichuan Province, China; Dr. Takuji Tanaka, Professor, Director, The Tohkai Cytopathology Institute-Cancer Research and Prevention, 5-1-2, Minami-Uzura, Gifu City 500-8285, Japan

Perazzo JC, Tallis S, Delfante A, Souto PA, Lemberg A, Eizayaga FX, Romay S. Hepatic encephalopathy: An approach to its multiple pathophysiological features. *World J Hepatol* 2012; 4(3):

50-65 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v4/i3/50.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.50

INTRODUCTION

Hepatic encephalopathy (HE) is a potentially reversible syndrome manifested by a wide spectrum of changes in consciousness, ranging from subtle behavioral abnormalities to deep coma and death. These neuropsychiatric conditions emerge as the major complication of acute or chronic liver disease.

The earliest known document to date on HE is the one in the Ancient Library of the University of Padova, Italy, authored by Giovanni Battista Morgagni in 1765. Morgagni's book of medicine described a case of liver cirrhosis associated with a possible HE complication[1]. Then and onwards, a long road has been traveled and much information has been compiled. There are many factors involved in HE, as a neurotransmission disorder in the central nervous system and in the neuromuscular system, that could lead to impairment of fine motor coordination, alterations in sleep patterns and cognition. Besides, in most cases only minor morphological changes were found in the brain; these are astrocyte swelling and Alzheimer type Ⅱ astrocyte[2]. Ammonium was initially indicated as the molecule responsible for the HE but may be incorrectly judged in advanced stages and may be only a scapegoat. Ammonia plasma levels are increased two- to three-fold in patients with mild to moderate cirrhotic HE and up to ten-fold in patients with acute liver failure (ALF)[3]. Ammonia is a neurotoxic molecule and its role has been widely studied. Hepatic and inter-organ trafficking of ammonia and its metabolite, glutamine (GLN), lead to hyperammonemic conditions. GLN metabolism *via* glutaminase is located in the intestinal epithelial cells and in the colonic epithelial cells[4]. Removal of hepatic ammonia is a differentiated work that includes the periportal hepatocyte, through the urea cycle and the perivenous hepatocytes converting ammonia into GLN *via* glutamine synthetase. When the liver is under pathological conditions, one or both types of hepatocytes could be damaged and the ammonia plasma level starts to rise. Minimal HE (formerly subclinical HE) is an initial clinical state with subtle abnormalities that can only be assessed by specific neuropsychometric and/or neurophysiological tests[5,6].

In 2002, a new classification of HE was proposed by the Working Party (World Congress of Gastroenterology)[7,8]. Basically, 3 types were proposed: type A, HE associated with acute liver failure; type B or HE associated with portal-systemic hepatocellular by-pass without intrinsic disease; and type C, or HE associated with cirrhosis and portal hypertension and portal systemic shunts. In this classification, minimal hepatic encephalopathy (MHE) was recognized as a subtype of C type HE. In 2009, the International Society for the Study of Hepatic Encephalopathy and Nitrogen Metabolism (ISHEN) completed this classification and added the experimental models associated with each type[9].

Although significant progress has been made in understanding the knowledge of molecular aspects involved in the development of HE, many questions remain unanswered and controversial issues need to be clarified. This editorial will focus on issues where, to the best of our knowledge, more research is needed in order to clarify, at least partially, controversial topics.

TOXIC SUBSTANCES

There are many neurotoxic substances and among them, related to HE, ammonia and manganese.

Ammonia in the central nervous system, muscle and kidney

It is well known that hyperammonemia (Figure 1), astrocyte changes and impairment in neurotransmission could lead to HE. Patients with liver injury concomitantly decrease the capability of detoxification of ammonia to urea, shifting this metabolic pathway to the muscular system and to the astrocyte in the central nervous system (CNS). In ALF, the progression of HE is associated with an increased risk of brain edema that could lead to brain herniation, a major cause of death. Therefore it is clear that when the ALF is complicated by HE, the risk to life is increased. The severity of HE is also associated with difference in survival[10]. The development of brain edema and ultimate death is a unique complication of ALF. There are factors that can be viewed with the ability to identify clinical situations with a higher possibility of developing brain edema, such as deep encephalopathy, hyperacute liver failure (acetaminophen-induced ALF), severe hyperammonemia, younger age and infection[11-13].

Currently, an area of controversy is to establish conclusively whether the percentages of deaths could be attributable to cerebral edema or to multiorgan failure. So, brain edema is a key for understanding the pathophysiology of ALF[14]. Chronic liver failure (CLF) spreads minimal to mild edema located surrounding the blood-brain barrier. The edema in CLF has very different consequences than those seen in acute liver failure[15].

In normal circumstances, the liver metabolizes all the ammonia coming from the small and large intestine. In the small intestine, the main source of energy in the enterocytes is glutamine, liberating ammonia[16].

Ammonia is sent to the liver through the portal vein. The liver metabolic stage of ammonia takes place in two major places, the periportal hepatocyte through the urea cycle takes care of the major part of the ammonia and the hepatocytes near the central vein transform the small quantities left into glutamine. Ammonia is also produced in healthy individuals by muscle and the kidney. These last two tissues have the ability to shift to ammonia detoxifying organs in the case of liver failure. Skeletal muscular tissue, due to its large size, becomes the main ammonia detoxifying organ in the case of chronic liver failure[17]. Muscular glutamine-synthase becomes important due to

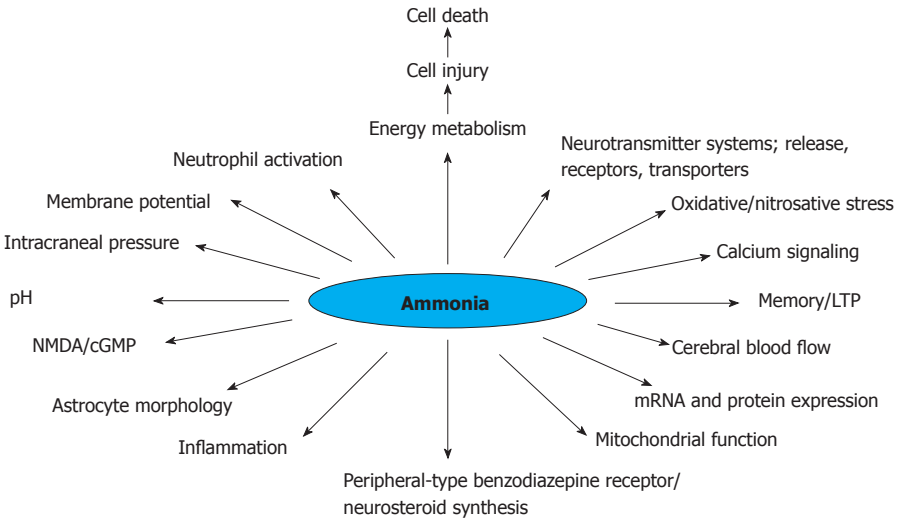


Figure 1 Changes induced by hyperammonemia (modified)[183]. NMDA: N-methyl-D-aspartate; LTP: Long term potentials.

the failing liver and brain metabolic activity[18]. Hypoproteic diet is a very common procedure in treating patients with liver failure, although a normal proteic diet may be metabolically more adequate and can be safely administered to the cirrhotic patient[19]. Hypoproteic diet may decrease the muscular mass and therefore the ammonia detoxifying ability. Recently, diet supplementation with branched chain amino acids has been shown to decrease minimal hepatic encephalopathy and to increase muscle mass[20].

The kidney is an organ capable of synthesizing and degrading ammonia. In normal conditions, the kidneys and liver interact closely to maintain the ammonia homeostasis. The kidneys are ammonia producers and only 30% of the ammonia produced is excreted with the urine. In liver failure and metabolic acidosis, the kidney has the ability to increase ammonia elimination to 70% of the produced ammonia[21,22]. Aquaporin 2 plays an important role in the regulation of water. Its expression is increased in the urine of cirrhotic patients, with a significant increase in patients with ascites, and is higher in compensated cirrhotic patients[23]. The Rh B and C glycoproteins group participates in the elimination of ammonia in the kidney[24,25]. Plasma ammonia concentration has been shown to be related to serum creatinine and the glomerular filtration rate. Renal dysfunction seems to increase cognitive impairment in patients with liver cirrhosis and might be implicated in the pathogenesis of hepatic encephalopathy[26]. Extra-hepatic ammonia metabolism appears to be the target of novel ways of treatment in chronic liver failure.

Manganese

Manganese is an essential trace metal that is involved in the metabolism of carbohydrates, lipids and proteins and has an important function as a cofactor for a number of enzymes[27]. It exists as divalent (Mn^{+2}) and trivalent forms in the plasma[28]. Both, divalent *via* an undefined transporter and trivalent Mn *via* the receptor-mediated endocytosis, may be transported into the brain, across the blood-brain and the blood-cerebrospinal fluid barriers and accumulate in the brain[29]. Manganese is neurotoxic, particularly affecting the actions of certain proteins (i.e., receptors) that interact with the neurotransmitter dopamine, probably *via* striatal dopamine depletion, N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) excitotoxicity or oxidative/nitrosative stress. Moreover, three basic Mn cellular neurotoxicity mechanisms can be described: (1) mitochondrial dysfunction and disruption of energy metabolism; (2) the inflammatory activation of the glia; and (3) disruption of the synaptic transmission and neuronal-glial communication[30]. Furthermore, manganese has prooxidant activity and direct toxic effects have been observed in dopaminergic neurons. Manganese induces a decrease in the content of peroxidase and catalase in the substantia nigra. This metal produces active oxygen species, i.e., superoxide hydrogen peroxide and hydroxy radical, and also produces 6-hydroxydopamine or other toxic catecholamines. Manganese induces the autooxidation of dopamine followed by the formation of toxic (semi)quinones and dopamine depletion[30,31]. Besides this, apoptosis may play a role in the dopaminergic neurotoxicity associated with manganese, the first metal to be reported to induce this form of cell death[31,32]. The early biochemical events show the impairment of energy metabolism and the process may require new synthesis of proteins such as c-Fos and c-Jun. In addition, manganese induces phosphorylation of c-Jun and SEK1/MKK4 (c-Jun N-terminal kinase) and tyrosine phosphorylation of several proteins. Manganese activates specific signal cascades including the c-Jun N-terminal kinase pathway[32].

In chronic exposure with Mn^{+2}, a decrease of GABA concentration in discrete regions of the SNC as the globus pallidus, but not in substance nigra or hippocampus, was observed[33,34]. This effect on GABA levels could be due to the direct action of the Mn^{+2} on the expression of glutamic decarboxylase, an enzyme that regulates GABA synthesis[35].

Many authors suggest the participation of Mn^{+2} in the pathogenesis of the HE, in addition to ammonia[36-38].

The increased Mn^{+2} in plasma and as a deposit in the CNS is believed to be due to decreased elimination of Mn^{+2} *via* biliary excretion[39], and to increased systemic availability due to portal-systemic shunting associated with chronic liver disease[39,40]. Manganese (Mn^{+2}) brain deposits have also been demonstrated in a rat model of cirrhosis[41] and recently high plasma levels of Mn^{+2} and deposits of Mn^{+2} in the hippocampus of rats with MHE and altered integrity of the blood-brain barrier (BBB) (unpublished results) were demonstrated. These results also show that the sharp effects that Mn^{+2} produces on the aminoacidergic neurotransmitter can be opposite to the chronic effects. In this way, when the Mn^{+2} accumulates in the synapsis[34], it produces a consistent neuropathy with an excitotoxic effect, suggesting that the mechanism of glutamate is involved in the development of the pathology described by the Mn^{+2}. Manganese may operate at the same time on the hypothalamus GABAergic and glutamatergic neurons that integrate the self-regulation neuronal network.

Moreover, in patients it has been found that there is correlation between plasma levels of Mn^{+2} with deposits of Mn^{+2} in basal ganglia registered by MRI[37,38,41,42]. As Krieger *et al*[36] stated, in end-stage liver disease, the question is whether the increased hyperintensity of Mn^{+2} in the globus pallidus indicates chronic Mn^{+2} intoxication or is an adaptive process, leading to improved efficacy of astrocyte ammonia detoxification. Patients with chronic liver failure have shown increased plasma and brain levels of manganese, displaying many of the clinical and pathological features associated with manganese toxicity[37,38,43,44]. The divalent manganese and magnesium have some comparable important overlapping functions[45]. Therefore, the work of Bjerring *et al*[46] is an interesting approach that shows that hypermagnesemia does not prevent intracranial hypertension or affect the brain content of glutamate, glutamine, or aquaporin-4 expression. Interestingly, divalent manganese also offers fields of study to explore the pathogenesis of the HE more deeply.

ROLE OF ASTROCYTES

Cerebral edema is a response to injuries such as stroke and HE and it is well known that the initial step involves the swelling of astrocytes[47,48]. Mechanisms mediating the astrocyte swelling and the subsequent brain edema remain poorly understood[49].

Glutamine

In HE due to ALF, most frequently caused by drug toxicity and viral hepatitis, marked astrocyte swelling has been demonstrated by electron transmission microscopy in patients[50]. The main determinant molecule involved in astrocyte swelling, at least triggering this pathological condition, is ammonia. Astrocyte's glutamine synthetase (GS) plays a detoxifying role of ammonia, by amidation of glutamate (GLU) to GLN. In hyperammonemic conditions, GLN is increased in the astrocyte and astrocyte swelling occurs. In rats with induced hyperammonemia, astrocyte swelling was reduced when an inhibitor of GS, methionine sulphoximine, was administered[51]. This could explain why the edema is focused primarily on the astrocyte, because the neurons and capillaries and other membranes in general of the CNS have unusually low water permeability[52]. Glutamime could have a relevant role in oxidative stress/nitrosative as a critical factor in ammonia-induced cell injury[53-55].

Albrecht *et al*[56] proposed the theory of the trojan horse to explain the glutamine pathway that leads to astrocyte damage. In summary, glutamine is a "stealth" carrier of ammonia. Glutamine enters mitochondria *via* a histidine-sensitive glutamine carrier, which is potentiated by ammonia. Glutamine is then hydrolyzed by phosphate-activated glutaminase, located in the inner mitochondrial membrane, yielding glutamate and ammonia. Significant amounts of glutamine have been shown to be metabolized in astrocytes. Thus, the generation of mitochondrial ammonia may reach high levels, inducing the mitochondrial potential membrane, reactive oxygen species (ROS), with the potential consequence of morpho-functional oxidative damage of the mitochondria[57,58] and its respiratory chain[58].

Blood brain barrier

Astrocytes are important components of the BBB. Any change in astrocytes is also a potential change in the integrity of the BBB. Besides this, three major causes of astrocyte swelling are considered: (1) cellular edema; (2) vasogenic edema; and (3) aquaporins (AQP). Of these three, the latest are aquaporins which were described in 1992 as water channels and since then many isoforms have been identified[59]. So far seven AQPs: AQP1, AQP3, AQP4, AQP5, AQP8, AQP9 and AQP11 have been identified in various animal tissues in the CNS. *Via* real-time studies, including the above mentioned AQPs, we also observed the expression of AQP6 and AQP7 in mouse cortical neurons[60].

In CNS AQP1, 9 and 4 are mainly described and associated with brain edema. CNS AQP-4 and AQP-9 are mainly located in astrocytes, while AQP 1 is in the choroid plexus. AQP4 is the most important of the three mentioned in the development of cerebral edema observed in ALF or CLF. Two different isoforms of AQP4 have been shown to exist. Both isoforms are found in the brain[60]. AQP4 is highly expressed in the plasma membrane of astrocytes. It is plentiful in astrocyte cells bordering the subarachnoidal space, ventricles and blood vessels. High levels of AQP4 were noted in areas where astrocytes come into direct contact with capillaries, ependymal layer and pia. In addition, the basolateral membrane of the ependymal cells that line the subfornical organ is positive for AQP4. The sites of AQP expression in the brain suggest a role in the movement of water across the blood brain barrier and thus in cerebrospinal fluid dynamics and the formation of brain edema[60,61]. Importantly, the AQPs are also associated with apoptosis in the CNS. Considering the AQP localization in the astrocyte,

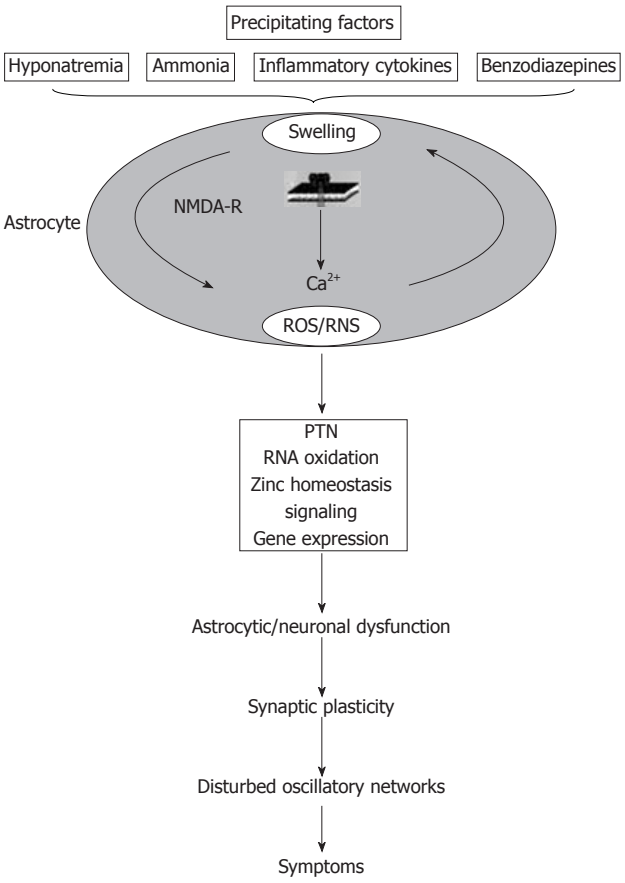


Figure 2 Interaction of oxidative stress, astrocyte swelling and cerebral ammonia toxicity. PTN: **Protein tyrosine nitration** (reproduced with permission)[64]. NMDA: N-methyl-D-aspartate; ROS: Reactive oxygen species.

the rectifying potassium channel Kir4.1 and the slow K^+ channel (Kslo), a dynamic view of Ast trafficking of fluid, can be constructed, likening it to ontogenetically modified epithelial cells[60-62].

Related to vasogenic edema, the ion channels, exchangers and transporters are important factors in cell volume regulation[59,60]. Changes in these systems may result in the loss of ion homeostasis[62] and the subsequent accumulation of intracellular water. These ion transporters and exchangers include the Na-K-Cl cotransporter-1 (NKCC1) that plays an important role in cell swelling/brain edema. Jayakumar *et al*[63] suggest that activation of NKCC1 is important in astrocyte swelling by ammonia and such activation is mediated by NKCC1 as well as by its oxidation/nitration and phosphorylation.

N-methyl-D-aspartate

Another point of view that should be included in the subject of swelling of astrocytes is the NMDA receptor pathway. As Häussinger *et al*[64] summarized, ammonia induces astrocyte swelling which is, in part, counteracted by volume-regulatory osmolyte depletion but leaves the astrocyte vulnerable towards swelling by a heterogeneous set of precipitating factors[64]. Astrocyte swelling involves NMDA receptor activation and the generation of ROS/RNS, which again favors astrocyte swelling. In this way, an autoamplificatory-signaling loop is generated. Consequences are PTN, oxidation of RNA, zinc mobilization and effects on gene transcription. This may impair glioneuronal communication and synaptic plasticity, resulting in disturbance of oscillatory networks, which finally accounts for the HE symptoms (Figure 2)[64].

Extracellular space

Another key component and little considered in HE is the extracellular space (ECS) diffusion parameters that may significantly affect communication between neurons as well as between neurons and glia. The diffusion of transmitters and other neuroactive substances through the ECS is also the underlying mechanism of extrasynaptic or so-called "volume transmission" in the brain[65,66]. Any decrease in the ability of neuroactive substances, ions or metabolites to diffuse through nervous tissue may represent a serious clinical problem due to the potential for disrupting brain function[67].

So far, it is not known whether astrocyte swelling, proliferation and hypertrophy during physiological and pathological states lead to persistent and functionally significant changes in ECS diffusion parameters. Astrocyte swelling is an early event in numerous pathological states, such as ischemia, hyponatremia and hepatic encephalopathy, and likely results from reduced extracellular osmolarity, elevated extracellular K1 concentration and/or glutamate[68,69]. When rapid cellular, particularly astrocyte, swelling occurs, water moves from the extra to the intracellular compartment. This causes a decrease in ECS volume and changes in the geometry of the intercellular spaces, e.g., during repetitive neuronal activity, ischemia, X-irradiation and experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis[70-72]. Several experimental conditions have been shown to result in ECS volume changes due to the movement of water from the extra to the intracellular space. In particular, these include a decrease in the extracellular osmotic pressure[73] and the accumulation of excitatory amino acids[74]. After the initial phase of swelling, cells, particularly astrocytes, actively down-regulate their volume by regulatory volume decrease (RVD) and by a net release of KCl, taurine and other amino acids[74,75]; in this way, ECS volume can return to normal values. Even later, when glia become reactive, astrogliosis may result in the formation of additional and persistent diffusion barriers formed, for example, by the hypertrophy of fine glial processes or by an accumulation of macromolecules in the ECS (e.g., extracellular matrix proteins and cytokines) produced by neurons and glia[76]. Syková[76] found that astrogliosis results in the formation of persistent diffusion barriers. By this mechanism, glial cells could significantly affect neuronal excitability synaptic as well as extrasynaptic transmission and be involved in plastic changes. Finally, the upstream sensors and transducers of cell volume changes, a number of integral membrane proteins, including integrins, growth factor receptors and cytokine receptors, have been assigned roles as sensors of cell volume perturbations. Direct evidence for roles in osmo-/volume sensing is so far limited with respect to cytokine

receptors and calcium-sensing receptors; hence, only the possible roles of integrins and growth factor receptors need further studies[77].

BLOOD BRAIN BARRIER

BBB is a diffusion barrier, a specialized system of brain microvasculature, essential for the normal function of the CNS. BBB is composed by the endothelial capillary cells, the capillary basement membrane, astrocyte end-feet ensheathing the vessels and pericytes embedded within the basement membrane[78]. The most relevant features of BBB endothelial cells which differentiate them from other endothelial cells are tight junctions and sparse pinocytic vesicular transport. BBB breakdown or alterations in transport systems play an important role in the pathogenesis of many CNS diseases, such as HIV-1 encephalitis, Alzheimer's disease, ischemia, tumors, multiple sclerosis and Parkinson's disease[79]. The pathophysiology of HE is closely linked to changes in the BBB. HE and the BBB is a field in which many controversies and many aspects not yet understood remain even today. It is well known that ammonia plasma levels correlate with CNS damage in liver failure[80]. Ammonia blood concentration is of major importance in the evaluation of patients with known or suspected HE[81]. Since Loockwood *et al*[82] published the first relevant data in this topic, many answers and new questions arose. Is arterial or venous ammonia concentration by itself an early marker and/or predictor in HE initiation or progression? Is BBB ammonia permeability increased in hyperammonemic states and/or in HE? Different views based on different data from different experiments or clinical work place this issue at a dynamic controversy. Ong *et al*[83] and Kramer *et al*[84] conclude that arterial, venous and partial pressure of blood ammonia in patients correlated with HE severity. On the other hand, Goldbecker *et al*[85] in a study with patients with liver fibrosis conclude that no increased BBB ammonia permeability was demonstrated or related to the development of HE. In a historical view, not many years ago, it was considered that ammonium did not pass from blood to brain tissue. Later, Stahl's work[86] demonstrates increased ammonia blood brain extraction in HE. Then, BBB permeability and integrity changes were demonstrated with PET, showing that brain ammonia concentration was significantly higher (80%) in HE, measured with the isotope ^{13}N by Lookwood *et al*[87]. A key data for this asseveration could be the permeability surface area product (PS), still not completely elucidated, in the framework of BBB. It is of interest that under their working conditions, Goldbecker *et al*[85] found no changes on PS. Maybe we could see a little further with a little help from some experimental data. In a model of MHE[57] that displays moderate hyperammonemia and portal hypertension, it was clearly demonstrated that BBB has morphofunctional changes. Transmission electron microscopy revealed tight junction disruption in BBB capillaries in the hippocampal area, with mild edema of astrocytes and ECS. Moreover, a hippocampal increased number of capillaries and capillaries area per field was also documented. That means that in an experimental MHE, increased permeability and angiogenesis in the hippocampal area was seen. Furthermore, energy failing, pathological changes in the endothelial mitochondria and decreased nitric oxide synthase (NOS) activity were documented[57]. Jensen *et al*[88] suggest that BBB leakage induce microglial reactions. These involve modulation of immunomolecules, cytokine and growth factor gene expression. In this sense, Rodrigo *et al*[89] conclude that chronic hyperammonemia is sufficient to induce microglial activation and neuroinflammation during HE. It may be important to start paying attention to other components of the BBB in HE, components that remain largely unknown as pericytes and the blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier[90]. Pericytes are involved in angiogenesis and its recruitment to the developing blood vessels and attachment of pericytes to the abluminal surface require heparin sulphate proteoglycan N-sulfation to retain platelet derived growth factor-beta (PDGFRb) homodimers and to activate the receptor PDGFRb signaling[91]. Recently, new data helped to introduce this new player in HE development. Armulik *et al*[92] describes a novel and critical role for pericytes in the integration of endothelial and astrocyte functions at the neurovascular unit and in the regulation of the BBB. The increased permeability occurs by endothelial transcytosis, a process that is rapidly arrested by the drug imatinib. Besides, by employing a metabolic profiling of serum samples by high-field 1H-nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy based on metabonomics approach, Jimenez *et al*[93] explored a methodology that could enhance diagnosis and monitor disease progression and patient response to treatment during MHE. It is also important to keep in mind that BBB is a very dynamic structure and could be damaged in different stages of HE. Our laboratory has shown[94] that the altered integrity of BBB gets back to normal in a HE-PVL induced model after portal pressure returns to a normal value. Moreover, in a group of animals with portal hypertension (PVL-induced) plus acetaminophen, behavioral changes and increased the BBB alterations were observed[95]. Therefore it can be concluded that the BBB is an area where further research is needed to integrate all components and generate a view of the totality in HE. To understand the pathophysiology of BBB, the data contributed to its components conducted in isolation, e.g., culture of astrocytes, are important but do not provide a comprehensive vision of BBB as a network. BBB, as a key access to the CNS is, without any doubt, a special issue that needs further exploration in order to know the specific role of the carrier or receptors in HE.

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM CELL DEATH

Perhaps one of the areas that may present greater potential for conflict is the cell death in the CNS in HE. Beyond what can be considered "physiological replacement", there is a need to determine whether there is a mechanism of lethal cell injury as part of the patho-

physiology of HE. Mitochondria are a major target in hyperammonemic conditions and could trigger different pathways. Many of them (a-f) have an important overlap.

Mitochondria, NMDA and energy metabolism

Acute exposure of brain preparations to pathophysiologically relevant concentrations of ammonia has numerous metabolic and neurophysiological effects, including alterations of synaptic inhibition and excitation[96] effects on cerebral energy metabolism and modifications of neurotransmitter-related processes. The effects on cerebral energy metabolism are associated with alterations of mitochondrial function[97], such as in reductions of brain ATP concentrations[98]. Two possible mechanisms have been proposed to explain ammonia-induced reductions in brain ATP concentration: a mechanism involving NMDA receptors and inhibition of the tricarboxylic acid cycle[99]. NMDA receptor is a mechanism identified with the potential to cause neuronal cell death in liver failure mediated by excitotoxicity, lactic acidosis, oxidative/nitrosative stress and the presence of pro-inflammatory cytokines[100]. The role of NMDA receptor in the reduction of ATP levels can be explained by two mechanisms: increased consumption of ATP due to activation of Na^+-K^+-ATPase and decreased synthesis of ATP in mitochondria due to impairment of calcium homeostasis[99]. NMDA receptor activation also results in mitochondrial swelling[101]. Ammonia-induced depletion of ATP is prevented by the administration of antagonists of NMDA receptor[102].

Acute ammonia intoxication leads to a rapid increase in intramitochondrial calcium content in the brain, followed by a reduction in the calcium capacity and calcium uptake rate. Injection of ammonia results in increased spontaneous calcium efflux from rat brain mitochondria and in potent inhibition of Na^+-induced calcium efflux. NMDA receptors in rat brain *in vivo* alters mitochondrial calcium homeostasis at several distinct steps and independent of the mitochondrial permeability transition (PTP)[103]. Proliferation of astrocytic mitochondria has been reported in conditions of chronic hyperammonemia, attributed to increased energy requirements[50]. In addition, chronic hyperammonemia similar in magnitude to that observed in end-stage chronic liver failure leads to down-regulation of functional NMDA receptor and prevents loss of ATP[99].

Calcium

The calcium ion has important roles in cell growth, signal transduction[104-106] and HE[107]. Most cell calcium is sequestered in the endoplasmic/sarcoplasmic-reticulum (ER/SR) membrane system and this sequestration produces an ER-to-cytoplasm gradient difference of greater than three orders of magnitude. Up to 50% of the calcium so sequestered is mobilizable by inositol triphosphate (IP3), which is formed through the hydrolysis of inositol 4, 5-biphosphate by phosphoinositol-dependent phospholipase C[108]. Calcium stored in the ER is not inert; however, a draining of calcium ions from the ER can cause secretion of resident proteins[109]. The transduction of the ER/SR calcium filling/depleting signal may be mediated in part by the phenomenon of "capacitative calcium entry"[110,111] in which a sustained transsarcolemmal calcium entry is coupled to a depletion of intracellular Ca^{2+} storage that is itself initiated by IP3. In HE, glutamate neurotoxicity has been well documented and glutamate is mainly mediated by excessive activation of the NMDA type of glutamate receptors[112].

Mitochondria are implicated at multiple stages of glutamate neurotoxicity, including the sequestration of Ca entering *via* the NMDA receptor, the bioenergetic collapse that triggers the ischemic release of glutamate, the generation of reactive oxygen species and the triggering of an apoptotic cascade under certain circumstances[112,113]. Excessive activation of NMDA receptor leads to the opening of its ion channel, allowing the entry of Ca from the extracellular space into the cytoplasm of the post synaptic neuron[103]. Much of this Ca entering the cell is sequestered by mitochondria[113]. The uptake of calcium by the mitochondria is driven by the mitochondrial membrane potential and will compete with the mitochondrial ATP synthase for protons. The abnormal cell calcium regulation has been implicated in cell-cycle progression[114,115] and may participate or precipitate cell death[116,117]. Calcium ATPase located on the ER/SR membrane (SERCA)[117,118] and, to a lesser extent, both plasma-membrane calcium ATPase and the mitochondria contribute to cell-calcium sequestration[118].

In neurons, intracellular calcium levels are controlled by ion channels in the plasma membrane such as NMDA receptors, voltage-gated calcium channels and certain α-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazolepropionic acid receptors, as well as by calcium exchange pathways between the cytosol and internal calcium stores, including the SERCA and mitochondria[118]. Synaptic activity and the subsequent opening of ligand and/or voltage-gated calcium channels can initiate cytosolic calcium transients which propagate towards the cell soma and enter the nucleus *via* its nuclear pore complexes embedded in the nuclear envelope. Recently, it was described that in hippocampal neurons the morphology of the nucleus affects the calcium dynamics within the nucleus[119-121].

The action of the calcium ion in the nucleus opens up new research possibilities in the interplay of calcium in HE with cellular structures, receptors, SERCA, mitochondria and nucleus[122]. The SERCA isogene group belongs to a family of ion-motive ATPase ("P" ATPase) whose reaction cycle involves the generation of an aspartyl-phosphate intermediate and is represented by three isogenes SERCA overexpression, produced through the use of an adenovirus vector or *via* a transgenic mouse model[123,124], which has suggested the existence of a phenotype consistent with facilitated intracellular calcium sequestration[123]. This finding supports the functional role of SERCA previously attributed to it through *in vitro* experimentation. The calcium compartmentalized in the SR may participate in cell-cycle progression. Moreover, the experimental SERCA blockade leads to a quiescent

G0-like state[115].

Altered bioenergetics and oxidative stress are also thought to play a major role in mitochondrial disorder inducing the PTP, involving the mechanism of ammonia neurotoxicity. The PTP is a Ca^{2+}-dependent, cyclosporin A sensitive process due to the opening of a pore in the inner mitochondrial membrane that leads to a collapse of ionic gradients and ultimately to mitochondrial dysfunction. Many of the factors that facilitate the induction of the MPT are also known to be implicated in the mechanism of HE, including free radicals, Ca^{2+}, nitric oxide, alkaline pH and glutamine[124]. Our laboratory has shown that oxidative stress was involved in hippocampal damage and curcumin protects against this oxidative stress in experimental MHE. These protective effects may be attributed to its antioxidant properties[125].

Peripheral-type benzodiazepine receptors

Another mitochondrial membrane receptor associated with alterations of cerebral energy metabolites and astrocytes swelling is the mitochondrial "peripheral-type" benzodiazepine receptors (PTBRs)[126]. PTBRs are 18 kDa mitochondrial membrane proteins and with a still elusive function in cell death. PTBRs are located in the mitochondrial membrane cells in the periphery and in astrocytes and they are not allosterically coupled to $GABA_A$ receptors[127]. Itzhak *el al*[128] described an increased PTBRs site in brain in mice with acute hyperammonemia resulting from toxic liver injury. Exposure of glioma cells in culture to PTBRs agonists results in proliferation and swelling of mitochondrial[129], phenomena which have been described following administration of ammonia resins to animals with chronic liver failure. PTBRs cause increases in state Ⅳ and decreases in state Ⅲ mitochondrial respiration rates, resulting in a significant decrease in the respiration control[130].

The peripheral-type benzodiazepine receptor is involved in control of Ca^{2+}-induced PTP opening in rat brain mitochondria. PTP opening is important in mitochondrial events leading to programmed cell death[113,131]. In addition to a specific anti-PBR antibody, delayed Ca^{2+}-induced dissipation of membrane potential (ψ_m) and diminished cyclosporine A-sensitive Ca^{2+} efflux, which are both indicative for the suppression of PTP opening[132]. Moreover, anti-PBR antibody caused partial retention of Ca^{2+} in the mitochondrial matrix in spite of ψ_m dissipation and reduced activation of respiratory rate at Ca^{2+}-induced PTP opening. A release of pro-apoptotic factors, apoptotic inducing factor (AIF) and cytochrome *c*, from rat brain mitochondria was shown at threshold Ca^{2+} load. Anti-PBR antibody blocks the release of AIF but does not affect the cytochrome *c* release. The endogenous PBR ligand, protoporphyrin Ⅸ, facilitated PTP opening and phosphorylation of the mitochondrial proteins, thus inducing effects opposite to anti-PBR antibody[132]. It is also interesting that in experimental ALF, moderate hypothermia prevents cerebral edema and reduces the up-regulation of astrocytic PTBRs[133].

Central nervous system cell death

A recent study from our laboratory has shown astrocyte death associated with mitochondrial dysfunction in hippocampal CNS in an experimental model of MHE[58]. The presence of DNA fragmentation with a higher ratio of the Bcl-2 family members Bax/Bcl-xL in the outer mitochondrial membrane and cytochrome c release indicate the presence of apoptosis. A marked decrease of cytochrome oxidase (complex Ⅳ of the electron transport chain) was also observed; mitochondria from these animals showed less ability to maintain the membrane potential ($\Delta\Psi_m$) stabilized[58].

Ammonia induced neuronal and oligodendroglial death, triggered apoptosis and activated caspases and calpain. Probably due to calpain activation, ammonia caused the cleavage of the cyclin-dependent kinase 5 activator, p35, to p25, the cdk5/p25 complex known to lead to neurodegeneration[134]. It is important to note that hyperammonemia induces different degrees of cellular damage and it mainly depends on the stage of development and whether the exposure is acute or chronic. Hyperammonemia during development is associated with neuronal cell loss and cerebral atrophy that leads to mental retardation and cerebral palsy in pediatric patients. Among the various pathogenic mechanisms involved, alterations in axonal and dendritic growth and cerebral energy have been demonstrated[135]. Acute hyperammonemia also results in decreased activities of free radical scavenging enzymes and again, free radical formation due to ammonia exposure is prevented by either NMDA receptor antagonists or NOS inhibitors[53,136].

Autophagy of mitochondria and/or selective mitophagy most likely play an important role in removing damaged organelles. Although cell death is often accompanied by autophagy, it is still controversial whether autophagy promotes or prevents cell death. When damaged mitochondria are removed by autophagy, this will prevent cytochrome c release and activation of caspases, whereas a block in autophagy would promote caspase-dependent cell death[137].

Studies containing opposite views have been reported. On one hand, Kosenko *et al*[138] did not observe apoptosis in an experimental model of acute intoxication with large ammonia doses. The animals (rats) were sacrificed 11 min after injection of ammonium acetate. This acute ammonia intoxication study did not affect caspase-9 or caspase-3 activities, the mitochondrial membrane potential remained unaltered in non-synaptic brain mitochondria, indicating that ammonia did not induce PTP formation in brain *in vivo*. Also, the nuclear level of p53 did not change, whereas its cytoplasmic level increased approximately two-fold. In agreement with the theory that translocation of the p53 from cytosol to nuclei is an essential step for induction of apoptosis, the authors did not find apoptotic nuclei in the brain. They conclude that this data supports the idea that ammonia neurotoxicity does not involve apoptosis and points to impaired p53 transfer from cytoplasm to nuclei as a possible preventer

of apoptosis. They also reported disturbances in the mitochondrial electron transport chain in brain mitochondria from rats injected with ammonia. On the other hand, in our laboratory, an opposite view in a chronic model of MHE PVL-induced cellular death was registered[58]. We found a 5 times higher expression of the proapoptotic member of the Bcl-2 family, Bax. Moreover, an increase of 2.3-times in the number of TUNEL-positive, simultaneously marked with GFAP was also observed in the hippocampal area.

A significant decrease in the mitochondrial respiratory control of MHE animals and a significant decrease (46%) of cytochrome oxidase (complex Ⅳ) were recorded. In addition, these mitochondria showed less ability to maintain membrane potential ($\Delta\psi_m$) (28% lower). The swelling experiments showed that mitochondria from MHE animals spontaneously tend to swell. This and the decreased $\Delta\psi_m$ could indicate an MPT mechanism. We conclude that the cellular death could be regarded as one of the earliest steps in the development of experimental MHE. Even although they are different experiments, e.g., an acute with animal sacrifice at 11 min after administration of ammonium and the other, chronic with sacrifice at 10 d of the PVL, the results, seemingly opposite, can be complementary with a broader view.

Programmed cell death

Cell swelling was shown to activate the release of excitatory amino acids, glutamate and aspartate, in astrocyte cultures[139-141]. In the brain, excitatory amino acids can promote neuronal cell damage *via* over-activation of glutamate receptors and could lead to cell death. One hypothetical route for astrocyte swelling-activated release of organic osmolytes is the ubiquitously expressed volume-regulated anion channel(s) (VRACs), which is activated by cell swelling and is permeable to a variety of inorganic and small organic anions, including the amino acids taurine, glutamate and aspartate. Cell shrinkage is a morphological feature of apoptosis, known as apoptotic volume decrease (AVD). AVD is an isosmotic cell shrinkage which is seen early after apoptotic stimuli and seems to be a prerequisite for apoptosis[142].

Under physiological conditions, brain cells, when subjected to osmotic fluctuations, will undergo regulatory volume increase/decrease (RVI/RVD) to achieve homeostatic balance with neurons in the brain being additionally protected by the BBB. However, during AVD following an apoptotic trigger, the cell undergoes anisotonic shrinkage that involves the loss of water and ions, particularly monovalent ions e.g., K^+, Na^+ and Cl^-. AVD results from a loss of KCl *via* $K^+$and Cl^- channels and concomitant loss of water[143]. VRAC seems to be the anion channel involved in AVD in several human and animal cells. Various K^+ channels, including inner membrane mitochondrial K^+, appear to be involved in AVD, depending on the cell type or stimulus used[144]. Among these are the two-pore K^+ channels that have been implicated in RVD in multiple cell types[145]. Inhibitors of swelling-activated K^+ and Cl^- channels attenuate AVD and several groups have suggested that the same channels are involved in RVD and in AVD[146]. Moreover, apoptotic cells exhibit an augmented RVD response that could reflect that volume-sensitive channels are more sensitive to cell swelling[147]. Whether the sensor and trigger mechanism for RVD and AVD have identical components with a different set point is still under discussion. In most cells, Cl^- conductance (gCl) is significantly lower than K^+ conductance (gK) under steady-state. Consequently, an increase in gK^+ alone results in K^+ loss and Na^+ uptake and not in KCl loss and cell shrinkage. This means that activation of VRAC is a necessity for initiation of AVD and in congruence with this, depolarization of the membrane potential during AVD has been demonstrated in several cell types[148-150]. Therefore, VRAC is a principal pathway for mediating organic osmolyte release in astrocyte swelling that could lead to cellular death[151].

Sharing pathways: Mitochondrial encephalopathy, lactic acidosis and stroke-like episodes

Although stroke is a pathological entity by itself, it shares some pathways or an important part of a pathway with HE. Mitochondrial encephalopathy, lactic acidosis and stroke-like episodes (MELAS) are a pathology that share many altered pathways with HE, such as cerebral edema, BBB abnormalities and alterations in brain mitochondria respiratory chain. MELAS is one of the most common and widely studied maternally inherited mitochondrial diseases that is frequently associated with the m.3243A > G point mutation in the mitochondrial tRNA LeuUUR gene[152]. The clinical phenotype is multisystemic but the triad of lactic acidosis, seizures and stroke-like episodes remains crucial to the diagnosis and reflects the complex and unique pathogenesis of this syndrome[153].

The levels of ventricular CSF lactate correlate with the severity of neurological impairment[154]. Besides, the increase in brain ROS activity was demonstrated in MELAS[155], as it was also clearly documented in HE[53]. MELAS experimental studies in cybrids showed that severe defects in protein synthesis and respiratory chain function segregate with the mutation, although the pathogenic threshold is high; more than 90% mutant mtDNAs are required to cause dysfunction[153]. However, most MELAS patients have well below 95% mutant mtDNA, suggesting that the data from cybrid studies may not be directly extrapolated to the clinical status. As in HE, the pathogenic mechanism of strokes and vasogenic edema cannot be explained by the available data. The same challenge for MELAS and HE is that without a better understanding of the pathogenesis, rational therapeutic intervention has not been possible.

The strokes, non-ischemic in origin and therefore called "stroke-like episodes", are at least partially reversible and do not conform to distribution of large cerebral arteries, but rather affect small arterioles and capillaries of the cortex while sparing the adjacent white matter[155]. The recurrent strokes are associated with vasogenic edema, as demonstrated by MR diffusion weighted imaging studies, suggesting that they may be due to increased

permeability in the BBB, perhaps caused by mitochondrial dysfunction in the endothelium of cerebral small vessels[156]. Furthermore, the accumulation of ventricular lactate indicates severe energy failure in the brain due to mitochondrial dysfunction and acute hypoxia during stroke-like episodes. Translational defects of the mitochondrial respiratory chain subunits and pathological alterations in the microvasculature and in BBB components have been documented in patients with MELAS, thus supporting the notion that BBB permeability may be increased due to mitochondrial respiratory failure in the cortical microvasculature[157], as it has also been demonstrated in MHE[57]. In MELAS, severe defects of respiratory chain complexes in immortalized endothelial cells and astrocytes as well as in primary astrocytes harboring the m.3243A > G mutation were associated[158,159]. Furthermore, the defects in EC cells with the MELAS mutation correlate with lower transendothelial electrical resistance, indicating increased permeability of the BBB endothelial cells[160] as it was also documented in experimental MHE[94].

NEUROENDOCRINE AXIS

Little is known about neuroendocrine changes that occur in portal-systemic hepatic encephalopathy and/or MHE. Scorticati *et al*[161] studied plasma prolactin (PRL) levels in our laboratory and the involvement of hyperammonemia, nitric oxide (NO) and dopaminergic and adrenergic systems in the control of this hormone secretion in a male rat model of mHE. The authors conducted *in vivo* studies to determine plasma ammonia and PRL levels, dopamine (DA), dihydroxyphenylacetic acid (DOPAC), epinephrine and norepinephrine content in medial basal hypothalamus (MBH) and anterior pituitary (APs). In addition, NOS activity and protein expression were evaluated in APs. In *in vitro* studies, the APs from intact rats were incubated with different doses of ammonia and PRL secretion was determined. In *ex vivo* studies, the APs from normal and PH rats were incubated in the presence of ammonia and/or a NOS inhibitor, NG-nitro-L-arginine-methyl ester (L-NAME), and PRL secretion was determined. It is well known that this model, PVL, has moderate hyperammonemia but the rest of the data obtained was a bit surprising, like a decrease in plasma PRL levels, a significant increase in norepinephrine content in both MBH and AP and an increase in NOS activity and NOS protein expression in APs. Also, *in vitro* the authors found reduced PRL secretion from APs and the presence of L-NAME, an inhibitor of NOS, abrogated the inhibitory effect of ammonia on PRL secretion from APs from control and MHE rats. Authors conclude that plasma PRL levels were decreased in MHE rats probably due to the high ammonia levels. The central noradrenergic system could also mediate this decrease. Also, the increase in NOS activity and/or content in AP induced NO production that directly inhibited PRL secretion from the AP, without the participation of the dopaminergic system. These results demonstrate the alteration of the neuroendocrine axis in a model of MHE and opens an interesting area of study that remains largely unexplored[161].

NEURONAL ENVIRONMENT, NEUROPLASTICITY, BEHAVIOR AND MEMORY

Pioneer investigations about memory processes began in 1957. Brenda Milner stated that certain forms of memory were stored in the hippocampus and the medial temporal lobe[162]. Since then, many works have described the relationship between the neuron and its environment in normal and pathological states. Investigations led by Kandel[163] have shown how the process of neuroplasticity modifies and adapts neuronal behavior in response to learning stimuli and transforms short term memory into long term memory. In the case of HE, although one of most important roles has been given to ammonia metabolism in astrocytes, many other mechanisms have been proposed such as gabaergic theory, manganese, receptor changes and modifications in permeability of BBB, among others. The NMDA receptor is the predominant molecular device for controlling synaptic plasticity and memory function[164]. Nonetheless, little is known about how these processes can modify neuronal behavior or how such behavior might be expressed by the neuron. In the early nineties, our workgroup found changes in norepinephrine uptake in CNS in portal vein of rats with experimental prehepatic portal hypertension induced by portal vein ligation (PVL)[165] and baro-reflex alteration[166]. These results triggered several other questions. Would changes in the peripheral nervous system be the expression of changes at the central nervous system level?

We found changes in norepinephrine´s metabolism in discrete diencephalic regions in PVL rats[167]. Moreover, ascending along the brain stem, we arrived at the hippocampus where we found changes in capillaries and astrocytes[168]. As described above, many molecule concentrations (in plasma, cerebrospinal fluid, *etc*) are modified or differentially expressed in portal hypertension acting on neurons, the glia, or both. It remains unclear whether BBB modifications selectively act on all those molecules or if these might modify the BBB integrity. Besides, inflammation and immunity have also been given general consideration regarding the pathophysiology of HE. In the words of Yirmiya[169], "in addition, immune-like processes are involved in tissue remodeling, which is a continuous process of dynamic alterations in a specific tissue or a whole organ that facilitates morphological and functional adaptations to the ever changing environmental demands". Therefore, immunomodulation of learning, memory, neural plasticity and neurogenesis are chapters worth considering in HE[169].

Reichenberg *et al*[170] found that experimental immune activation by endotoxin produced alterations in emotional states and decreased performance in memory tests. Moreover, endotoxin-induced changes in emotional parameters were found to have a complex time course,

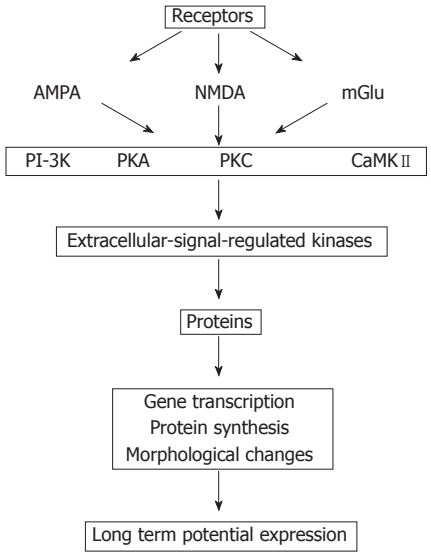


Figure 3 Proposed sequences that finally induce changes in the long term potentials, which is down regulated in hyperammonemia (modified from Lynch[182]). AMPA: α-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazolepropionic acid receptor; NMDA: **N-metil D-**aspartato; mGlu: **Metabotropic glutamate receptors**; PI-3K: **Phosphatidylinositol 3-kinases; PKA and PKC: Protein kinase A and C**; CaMK Ⅱ: **Ca^{2+}**/calmodulin-dependent protein kinases Ⅱ.

characterized by an early elevation in anxiety levels followed by an increase in depressed mood[170]. Evidence suggests that glia and the soluble form of tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) may be involved in a specific form of synaptic scaling[171,172]. Accumulating evidence suggests that inflammatory cytokines, such as TNF-alpha, interleukin (IL)-1 and IL-6, meditate these disturbances. In animals, sickness behavior can be induced by administration of cytokines. Antagonists or synthesis blockers of cytokines abolish sickness behavior in response to various immune challenges and a similar response was also demonstrated in humans[170].

Learning impairment is present in cirrhotic patients with neuropsychological abnormalities consistent with attention deficit secondary to MHE[173]. Patients with MHE score lower than controls in memory tasks, predominantly due to deficits in attention and visual perception[174]. Hilsabeck *et al*[175] found that cognitive impairment on a visuoconstruction task ranged from 9% to 38% of patients on a measure of complex attention, visual scanning and tracking, and psychomotor speed. The greater viral C hepatitis (HCV) disease severity indicated by liver fibrosis was associated with greater cognitive dysfunction. Objective cognitive impairment was not related to subjective cognitive complaints or psychiatric symptoms. These findings suggest that a significant number of patients with chronic HCV have experienced cognitive difficulties that may interfere with activities of daily living and quality of life[175]. Hepatocyte growth factor/scattered factor (HGF/SF) possess motogenic activity, which is essential for normal development of other organ systems and is a conserved mechanism that regulates trans-telencephalic migration of interneurons in embryonic state[176]. Porto-systemic encephalopathy (PSE) is often preceded by ascites and this condition is characterized by gastro-intestinal capillary increased permeability, endotoxin translocation, activation of cytokines and failure to endotoxin removal. Lipopolysaccharide is elevated in portal blood and activates Kupffer cells through the CD14/toll-like receptor-4 complex to produce ROS *via* NADPH oxidase[177,178].

Thus, it might be possible that the chain of events triggered by endotoxin could lead to a derangement of neuronal functioning. Some evidence supports the idea that both direct and indirect effects of lipopolysaccharides/endotokinemia might be related to neuron plasticity and memory changes, as well as mood alterations, as seen in PSE. Currently, there is no evidence that directly supports the relationship between HE, lipopolysaccharides and neuron derangements. HE is a neurological complication that affects attention and memory. Experimental animal models have been used to study HE, the most frequent being the porto-caval shunt (PCS). In order to investigate learning impairment and brain functional alterations in this model, Méndez *et al*[179] assessed reversal learning and neural metabolic activity in a PCS rat model.

PCS and sham-operated rats were tested for reversal learning in the Morris water maze. Brains were then processed for cytochrome oxidase histochemistry. The PCS group had reversal learning impairment and a reduction in cytochrome oxidase activity in the prefrontal cortex, ventral tegmental area and accumbens shell nucleus. These results suggest that this model of portosystemic HE shows learning impairments that could be linked to dysfunction in neural activity in the prefrontal cortex and regions involved in motivated behavior[179].

The memory consolidation at the cellular level is based on the facilitation or attenuation of transmission at specific synapses. Besides, antibodies against L1 glycoprotein and neural cell adhesion molecules (NCAM) can impair memory consolidation. Moreover, learning is followed by altered expression and glycosylation of L1 and in NCAM[180].

Addition of 8 Br-cGMP to slices treated with ammonia restores both phosphodiesterase activation and maintenance of long term potentials (LTP)[181]. Impairment of LTP in hyperammonemia may be involved in the impairment of the cognitive function in patients with HE (Figure 3)[182]. Although many theories have been proposed, the intimate mechanism whereby a liver pathology triggered HE remains to be known. There is insufficient evidence to determine if moderate hyperammonemia and/or portal hypertension, major complications in liver disease, or if one or more mediators (for instance, manganese, ammonia, HGF, TGFB, interleukins, reactive oxygen species, neurotransmitters, aquaporins, *etc*) are responsible or co-responsible for triggering MHE.

CONCLUSION

We have reviewed some of the mechanisms involved in the development of HE. We believe that these issues have areas of interest and potential controversy. Importantly, experimental models can study different

stages of HE. The earliest form of HE is MHE. We consider that a comprehensive study of MHE will be useful to identify the many complex and interrelated pathways and learn its sequence and the pathways that are activated from the beginning to the later stages.

REFERENCES

1 **Amodio P**. The liver, the brain and nitrogen metabolism. *Metab Brain Dis* 2009; **24**: 1-4
2 **Norenberg MD.** The Astrocyte in Liver Disease. In: **Fedoraff** S, **Hertz L, editors. Advances in Cellular and Neurobiology.** New York: **Academic Press, 1981: 304-352**
3 **Lockwood AH**, Yap EW, Rhoades HM, Wong WH. Altered cerebral blood flow and glucose metabolism in patients with liver disease and minimal encephalopathy. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab* 1991; **11**: 331-336
4 **Olde Damink SW**, Jalan R, Redhead DN, Hayes PC, Deutz NE, Soeters PB. Interorgan ammonia and amino acid metabolism in metabolically stable patients with cirrhosis and a TIPSS. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: 1163-1171
5 **Guerit JM**, Amantini A, Fischer C, Kaplan PW, Mecarelli O, Schnitzler A, Ubiali E, Amodio P. Neurophysiological investigations of hepatic encephalopathy: ISHEN practice guidelines. *Liver Int* 2009; **29**: 789-796
6 **Ferenci P**, Lockwood A, Mullen K, Tarter R, Weissenborn K, Blei AT. Hepatic encephalopathy--definition, nomenclature, diagnosis, and quantification: final report of the working party at the 11th World Congresses of Gastroenterology, Vienna, 1998. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 716-721
7 Quadrennial reviews and working party reports from the World Congress in Gastroenterology. February 24-March 1, 2002. Bangkok, Thailand. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **17** Suppl: S1-S195
8 **Mullen KD**. Review of the final report of the 1998 Working Party on definition, nomenclature and diagnosis of hepatic encephalopathy. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25** Suppl 1: 11-16
9 **Butterworth RF**, Norenberg MD, Felipo V, Ferenci P, Albrecht J, Blei AT. Experimental models of hepatic encephalopathy: ISHEN guidelines. *Liver Int* 2009; **29**: 783-788
10 **Blei AT.** Hepatic Encephalopathy in Acute Liver Failure. In: Häussinger D, Kircheiss G, Schliess F, editors. Hepatic Encephalopathy and Nitrogen Metabolism. London-Heidelberg: Springer, 2006: 433-441
11 **Vaquero J**, Polson J, Chung C, Helenowski I, Schiodt FV, Reisch J, Lee WM, Blei AT. Infection and the progression of hepatic encephalopathy in acute liver failure. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 755-764
12 **Vaquero J**, Chung C, Blei AT. Brain edema in acute liver failure. A window to the pathogenesis of hepatic encephalopathy. *Ann Hepatol* **2003; 2**: 12-22
13 **Häussinger D**, Laubenberger J, vom Dahl S, Ernst T, Bayer S, Langer M, Gerok W, Hennig J. Proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy studies on human brain myo-inositol in hypo-osmolarity and hepatic encephalopathy. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **107**: 1475-1480
14 **Bernal W**, Hall C, Karvellas CJ, Auzinger G, Sizer E, Wendon J. Arterial ammonia and clinical risk factors for encephalopathy and intracranial hypertension in acute liver failure. *Hepatology* 2007; **46**: 1844-1852
15 **Laleman W**, Verbeke L, Meersseman P, Wauters J, van Pelt J, Cassiman D, Wilmer A, Verslype C, Nevens F. Acute-on-chronic liver failure: current concepts on definition, pathogenesis, clinical manifestations and potential therapeutic interventions. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2011; **5**: 523-537; quiz 537
16 **Weber FL**, Friedman DW, Fresard KM. Ammonia production from intraluminal amino acids in canine jejunum. *Am J Physiol* 1988; **254**: G264-G268
17 **Desjardins P**, Rao KV, Michalak A, Rose C, Butterworth RF. Effect of portacaval anastomosis on glutamine synthetase protein and gene expression in brain, liver and skeletal muscle. *Metab Brain Dis* 1999; **14**: 273-280
18 **He Y**, Hakvoort TB, Köhler SE, Vermeulen JL, de Waart DR, de Theije C, ten Have GA, van Eijk HM, Kunne C, Labruyere WT, Houten SM, Sokolovic M, Ruijter JM, Deutz NE, Lamers WH. Glutamine synthetase in muscle is required for glutamine production during fasting and extrahepatic ammonia detoxification. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 9516-9524
19 **Córdoba J**, López-Hellín J, Planas M, Sabín P, Sanpedro F, Castro F, Esteban R, Guardia J. Normal protein diet for episodic hepatic encephalopathy: results of a randomized study. *J Hepatol* 2004; **41**: 38-43
20 **Les I**, Doval E, García-Martínez R, Planas M, Cárdenas G, Gómez P, Flavià M, Jacas C, Mínguez B, Vergara M, Soriano G, Vila C, Esteban R, Córdoba J. Effects of branched-chain amino acids supplementation in patients with cirrhosis and a previous episode of hepatic encephalopathy: a randomized study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2011; **106**: 1081-1088
21 **Olde Damink SW**, Jalan R, Dejong CH. Interorgan ammonia trafficking in liver disease. *Metab Brain Dis* 2009; **24**: 169-181
22 **Wright G**, Noiret L, Olde Damink SW, Jalan R. Interorgan ammonia metabolism in liver failure: the basis of current and future therapies. *Liver Int* 2011; **31**: 163-175
23 **Eggers J**, Pade O, Rogge A, Schreiber SJ, Valdueza JM. Transcranial color-coded sonography successfully visualizes all intracranial parts of the internal carotid artery using the combined transtemporal axial and coronal approach. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol* 2009; **30**: 1589-1593
24 **Bishop JM**, Verlander JW, Lee HW, Nelson RD, Weiner AJ, Handlogten ME, Weiner ID. Role of the Rhesus glycoprotein, Rh B glycoprotein, in renal ammonia excretion. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2010; **299**: F1065-F1077
25 **Lee HW**, Verlander JW, Bishop JM, Nelson RD, Handlogten ME, Weiner ID. Effect of intercalated cell-specific Rh C glycoprotein deletion on basal and metabolic acidosis-stimulated renal ammonia excretion. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2010; **299**: F369-F379
26 **Kalaitzakis E**, Björnsson E. Renal function and cognitive impairment in patients with liver cirrhosis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2007; **42**: 1238-1244
27 **Keen CL**, Fransson GB, Lönnerdal B. Supplementation of milk with iron bound to lactoferrin using weanling mice. II: Effects on tissue manganese, zinc, and copper. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 1984; **3**: 256-261
28 **Scheuhammer AM**, Cherian MG. Binding of manganese in human and rat plasma. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1985; **840**: 163-169
29 **Aschner M**, Vrana KE, Zheng W. Manganese uptake and distribution in the central nervous system (CNS). *Neurotoxicology* **1999; 20**: 173-180
30 **Takeda A**. Manganese action in brain function. *Brain Res Brain Res Rev* 2003; **41**: 79-87
31 **Desole MS**, Sciola L, Delogu MR, Sircana S, Migheli R. Manganese and 1-methyl-4-(2′-ethylpheny1)-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine induce apoptosis in PC12 cells. *Neurosci Lett* 1996; **209**: 193-196
32 **Hirata Y**, Adachi K, Kiuchi K. Activation of JNK pathway and induction of apoptosis by manganese in PC12 cells. *J Neurochem* 1998; **71**: 1607-1615
33 **Bonilla E**, Arrieta A, Castro F, Dávila JO, Quiroz I. Manganese toxicity: free amino acids in the striatum and olfactory bulb of the mouse. *Invest Clin* 1994; **35**: 175-181
34 **Takeda A**, Sotogaku N, Oku N. Manganese influences the levels of neurotransmitters in synapses in rat brain. *Neuroscience* 2002; **114**: 669-674
35 **Tomás-Camardiel M**, Herrera AJ, Venero JL, Cruz Sánchez-

Hidalgo M, Cano J, Machado A. Differential regulation of glutamic acid decarboxylase mRNA and tyrosine hydroxylase mRNA expression in the aged manganese-treated rats. *Brain Res Mol Brain Res* 2002; **103**: 116-129
36 **Krieger D**, Krieger S, Jansen O, Gass P, Theilmann L, Lichtnecker H. Manganese and chronic hepatic encephalopathy. *Lancet* 1995; **346**: 270-274
37 **Spahr L**, Butterworth RF, Fontaine S, Bui L, Therrien G, Milette PC, Lebrun LH, Zayed J, Leblanc A, Pomier-Layrargues G. Increased blood manganese in cirrhotic patients: relationship to pallidal magnetic resonance signal hyperintensity and neurological symptoms. *Hepatology* 1996; **24**: 1116-1120
38 **Butterworth RF**. Complications of cirrhosis III. Hepatic encephalopathy. *J Hepatol* 2000; **32**: 171-180
39 **Papavasiliou PS**, Miller ST, Cotzias GC. Role of liver in regulating distribution and excretion of manganese. *Am J Physiol* 1966; **211**: 211-216
40 **Rose C**, Butterworth RF, Zayed J, Normandin L, Todd K, Michalak A, Spahr L, Huet PM, Pomier-Layrargues G. Manganese deposition in basal ganglia structures results from both portal-systemic shunting and liver dysfunction. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **117**: 640-644
41 **Siger-Zajdel M**, Selmaj K. Hyperintense basal ganglia on T1-weighted magnetic resonance images in a patient with common variable immunodeficiency associated with elevated serum manganese. *J Neuroimaging* 2002; **12**: 84-86
42 **Sassine MP**, Mergler D, Bowler R, Hudnell HK. Manganese accentuates adverse mental health effects associated with alcohol use disorders. *Biol Psychiatry* 2002; **51**: 909-921
43 **Hauser RA**, Zesiewicz TA, Rosemurgy AS, Martinez C, Olanow CW. Manganese intoxication and chronic liver failure. *Ann Neurol* 1994; **36**: 871-875
44 **Hauser RA**, Zesiewicz TA, Martinez C, Rosemurgy AS, Olanow CW. Blood manganese correlates with brain magnetic resonance imaging changes in patients with liver disease. *Can J Neurol Sci* 1996; **23**: 95-98
45 **Frausto da Silva JJR,** Williams R J P. The Biological Chemistry of the Elements. The Inorganic Chemistry of Life. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1991: 122-144
46 **Bjerring PN**, Eefsen M, Larsen FS, Bernal W, Wendon J. Hypermagnesemia does not prevent intracranial hypertension and aggravates cerebral hyperperfusion in a rat model of acute hyperammonemia. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 1986-1994
47 **Norenberg MD**. A light and electron microscopic study of experimental portal-systemic (ammonia) encephalopathy. Progression and reversal of the disorder. *Lab Invest* 1977; **36**: 618-627
48 **Martinez A**. Electron microscopy in human hepatic encephalopathy. *Acta Neuropathol* 1968; **11**: 82-86
49 **Traber P**, DalCanto M, Ganger D, Blei AT. Effect of body temperature on brain edema and encephalopathy in the rat after hepatic devascularization. *Gastroenterology* 1989; **96**: 885-891
50 **Gregorios JB**, Mozes LW, Norenberg MD. Morphologic effects of ammonia on primary astrocyte cultures. II. Electron microscopic studies. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* 1985; **44**: 404-414
51 **Kallaras C**, Anogianakis G, Apostolakis M, Manthos A, Sioga A, Economou L, Foroglou C. Ultrastructural alterations of the rabbit sciatic nerve, spinal cord and cerebellum, following methionine sulphoximine administration. *Histol Histopathol* 1994; **9**: 105-112
52 **Aitken PG**, Borgdorff AJ, Juta AJ, Kiehart DP, Somjen GG, Wadman WJ. Volume changes induced by osmotic stress in freshly isolated rat hippocampal neurons. *Pflugers Arch* 1998; **436**: 991-998
53 **Norenberg MD**, Jayakumar AR, Rama Rao KV. Oxidative stress in the pathogenesis of hepatic encephalopathy. *Metab Brain Dis* 2004; **19**: 313-329
54 **Häussinger D**, Görg B, Reinehr R, Schliess F. Protein tyrosine nitration in hyperammonemia and hepatic encephalopathy. *Metab Brain Dis* 2005; **20**: 285-294
55 **Häussinger D**, Schliess F. Astrocyte swelling and protein tyrosine nitration in hepatic encephalopathy. *Neurochem Int* 2005; **47**: 64-70
56 **Albrecht J**, Norenberg MD. Glutamine: a Trojan horse in ammonia neurotoxicity. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 788-794
57 **Lores-Arnaiz S**, Perazzo JC, Prestifilippo JP, Lago N, D'Amico G, Czerniczyniec A, Bustamante J, Boveris A, Lemberg A. Hippocampal mitochondrial dysfunction with decreased mtNOS activity in prehepatic portal hypertensive rats. *Neurochem Int* 2005; **47**: 362-368
58 **Bustamante J**, Lores-Arnaiz S, Tallis S, Roselló DM, Lago N, Lemberg A, Boveris A, Perazzo JC. Mitochondrial dysfunction as a mediator of hippocampal apoptosis in a model of hepatic encephalopathy. *Mol Cell Biochem* 2011; **354**: 231-240
59 **Chrispeels MJ**, Agre P. Aquaporins: water channel proteins of plant and animal cells. *Trends Biochem Sci* 1994; **19**: 421-425
60 **Amiry-Moghaddam M**, Ottersen OP. The molecular basis of water transport in the brain. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 2003; **4**: 991-1001
61 **Badaut J**, Regli L. Distribution and possible roles of aquaporin 9 in the brain. *Neuroscience* 2004; **129**: 971-981
62 **Kimelberg HK.** Water transport in the brain: basic concepts and astrocytic swelling. In: Häussinger D, Kircheiss G, Schliess F, editors. Hepatic Encephalopathy and Nitrogen Metabolism. London-Heidelberg: Springer, 2006: 3-19
63 **Jayakumar AR**, Liu M, Moriyama M, Ramakrishnan R, Forbush B, Reddy PV, Norenberg MD. Na-K-Cl Cotransporter-1 in the mechanism of ammonia-induced astrocyte swelling. *J Biol Chem* 2008; **283**: 33874-33882
64 **Häussinger D,** Görg B. Interaction of oxidative stress, astrocyte swelling and cerebral ammonia toxicity. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care* 2010; **13**: 87-92
65 **Cserr HF**, DePasquale M, Nicholson C, Patlak CS, Pettigrew KD, Rice ME. Extracellular volume decreases while cell volume is maintained by ion uptake in rat brain during acute hypernatremia. *J Physiol* 1991; **442**: 277-295
66 **Nicholson C**, Syková E. Extracellular space structure revealed by diffusion analysis. *Trends Neurosci* 1998; **21**: 207-215
67 **Verbalis JG**, Gullans SR. Rapid correction of hyponatremia produces differential effects on brain osmolyte and electrolyte reaccumulation in rats. *Brain Res* 1993; **606**: 19-27
68 **Kimelberg HK**, Goderie SK, Conley PA, Higman S, Goldschmidt R, Amundson RH. Uptake of [3H]serotonin and [3H]glutamate by primary astrocyte cultures. I. Effects of different sera and time in culture. *Glia* 1992; **6**: 1-8
69 **Hansson E**, Rönnbäck L. Astroglial modulation of synaptic transmission. *Perspect Dev Neurobiol* 1994; **2**: 217-223
70 **Svoboda J**, Syková E. Extracellular space volume changes in the rat spinal cord produced by nerve stimulation and peripheral injury. *Brain Res* 1991; **560**: 216-224
71 **Simonová Z**, Svoboda J, Orkand P, Bernard CC, Lassmann H, Syková E. Changes of extracellular space volume and tortuosity in the spinal cord of Lewis rats with experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *Physiol Res* 1996; **45**: 11-22
72 **Krizaj D**, Rice ME, Wardle RA, Nicholson C. Water compartmentalization and extracellular tortuosity after osmotic changes in cerebellum of Trachemys scripta. *J Physiol* 1996; **492** (Pt 3): 887-896
73 **Chvátal A**, Pastor A, Mauch M, Syková E, Kettenmann H. Distinct populations of identified glial cells in the developing rat spinal cord slice: ion channel properties and cell morphology. *Eur J Neurosci* 1995; **7**: 129-142
74 **Pasantes Morales H**, Schousboe A. Volume regulation in astrocytes: a role for taurine as an osmoeffector. *J Neurosci Res* 1988; **20**: 503-509
75 **Pasantes-Morales H**, Franco R, Torres-Marquez ME, Hernández-Fonseca K, Ortega A. Amino acid osmolytes in regula-

tory volume decrease and isovolumetric regulation in brain cells: contribution and mechanisms. *Cell Physiol Biochem* 2000; **10**: 361-370
76 **Syková E**. Glial diffusion barriers during aging and pathological states. *Prog Brain Res* 2001; **132**: 339-363
77 **Hoffmann EK**, Lambert IH, Pedersen SF. Physiology of cell volume regulation in vertebrates. *Physiol Rev* 2009; **89**: 193-277
78 **Persidsky Y**, Ramirez SH, Haorah J, Kanmogne GD. Blood-brain barrier: structural components and function under physiologic and pathologic conditions. *J Neuroimmune Pharmacol* 2006; **1**: 223-236
79 **Correale J**, Villa A. Cellular elements of the blood-brain barrier. *Neurochem Res* 2009; **34**: 2067-2077
80 **Ballabh P**, Braun A, Nedergaard M. The blood-brain barrier: an overview: structure, regulation, and clinical implications. *Neurobiol Dis* 2004; **16**: 1-13
81 **Clemmesen JO**, Larsen FS, Kondrup J, Hansen BA, Ott P. Cerebral herniation in patients with acute liver failure is correlated with arterial ammonia concentration. *Hepatology* 1999; **29**: 648-653
82 **Lockwood AH**, McDonald JM, Reiman RE, Gelbard AS, Laughlin JS, Duffy TE, Plum F. The dynamics of ammonia metabolism in man. Effects of liver disease and hyperammonemia. *J Clin Invest* 1979; **63**: 449-460
83 **Ong JP**, Aggarwal A, Krieger D, Easley KA, Karafa MT, Van Lente F, Arroliga AC, Mullen KD. Correlation between ammonia levels and the severity of hepatic encephalopathy. *Am J Med* 2003; **114**: 188-193
84 **Kramer L**, Tribl B, Gendo A, Zauner C, Schneider B, Ferenci P, Madl C. Partial pressure of ammonia versus ammonia in hepatic encephalopathy. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 30-34
85 **Goldbecker A**, Buchert R, Berding G, Bokemeyer M, Lichtinghagen R, Wilke F, Ahl B, Weissenborn K. Blood-brain barrier permeability for ammonia in patients with different grades of liver fibrosis is not different from healthy controls. *J Cereb Blood Flow Metab* 2010; **30**: 1384-1393
86 **Stahl J**. Studies of the blood ammonia in liver disease. Its diagnostic, prognostic, and therapeutic significance. *Ann Intern Med* 1963; **58**: 1-24
87 **Lockwood AH**, Finn RD, Campbell JA, Richman TB. Factors that affect the uptake of ammonia by the brain: the blood-brain pH gradient. *Brain Res* 1980; **181**: 259-266
88 **Jensen MB**, Finsen B, Zimmer J. Morphological and immunophenotypic microglial changes in the denervated fascia dentata of adult rats: correlation with blood-brain barrier damage and astroglial reactions. *Exp Neurol* 1997; **143**: 103-116
89 **Rodrigo R**, Cauli O, Gomez-Pinedo U, Agusti A, Hernandez-Rabaza V, Garcia-Verdugo JM, Felipo V. Hyperammonemia induces neuroinflammation that contributes to cognitive impairment in rats with hepatic encephalopathy. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **139**: 675-684
90 **Engelhardt B**, Sorokin L. The blood-brain and the blood-cerebrospinal fluid barriers: function and dysfunction. *Semin Immunopathol* 2009; **31**: 497-511
91 **Dalkara T**, Gursoy-Ozdemir Y, Yemisci M. Brain microvascular pericytes in health and disease. *Acta Neuropathol* 2011; **122**: 1-9
92 **Armulik A**, Genové G, Mäe M, Nisancioglu MH, Wallgard E, Niaudet C, He L, Norlin J, Lindblom P, Strittmatter K, Johansson BR, Betsholtz C. Pericytes regulate the blood-brain barrier. *Nature* 2010; **468**: 557-561
93 **Jiménez B**, Montoliu C, MacIntyre DA, Serra MA, Wassel A, Jover M, Romero-Gomez M, Rodrigo JM, Pineda-Lucena A, Felipo V. Serum metabolic signature of minimal hepatic encephalopathy by (1)H-nuclear magnetic resonance. *J Proteome Res* 2010; **9**: 5180-5187
94 **Eizayaga F**, Scorticati C, Prestifilippo JP, Romay S, Fernandez MA, Castro JL, Lemberg A, Perazzo JC. Altered blood-brain barrier permeability in rats with prehepatic portal hypertension turns to normal when portal pressure is lowered. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 1367-1372
95 **Scorticati C**, Prestifilippo JP, Eizayaga FX, Castro JL, Romay S, Fernández MA, Lemberg A, Perazzo JC. Hyperammonemia, brain edema and blood-brain barrier alterations in prehepatic portal hypertensive rats and paracetamol intoxication. *World J Gastroenterol* 2004; **10**: 1321-1324
96 **Szerb JC**, Butterworth RF. Effect of ammonium ions on synaptic transmission in the mammalian central nervous system. *Prog Neurobiol* 1992; **39**: 135-153
97 **Felipo V**, Butterworth RF. Mitochondrial dysfunction in acute hyperammonemia. *Neurochem Int* 2002; **40**: 487-491
98 **McCandless DW**, Schenker S. Effect of acute ammonia intoxication on energy stores in the cerebral reticular activating system. *Exp Brain Res* 1981; **44**: 325-330
99 **Kosenko E**, Kaminsky Y, Grau E, Miñana MD, Marcaida G, Grisolía S, Felipo V. Brain ATP depletion induced by acute ammonia intoxication in rats is mediated by activation of the NMDA receptor and Na+,K(+)-ATPase. *J Neurochem* 1994; **63**: 2172-2178
100 **Butterworth RF**. Neuronal cell death in hepatic encephalopathy. *Metab Brain Dis* 2007; **22**: 309-320
101 **Felipo V**, Butterworth RF. Neurobiology of ammonia. *Prog Neurobiol* 2002; **67**: 259-279
102 **Kosenko E**, Kaminski Y, Lopata O, Muravyov N, Felipo V. Blocking NMDA receptors prevents the oxidative stress induced by acute ammonia intoxication. *Free Radic Biol Med* 1999; **26**: 1369-1374
103 **Kosenko E**, Kaminsky Y, Stavroskaya IG, Felipo V. Alteration of mitochondrial calcium homeostasis by ammonia-induced activation of NMDA receptors in rat brain in vivo. *Brain Res* 2000; **880**: 139-146
104 **van Breemen C**, Saida K. Cellular mechanisms regulating [Ca2+]i smooth muscle. *Annu Rev Physiol* 1989; **51**: 315-329
105 **Pozzan T**, Rizzuto R, Volpe P, Meldolesi J. Molecular and cellular physiology of intracellular calcium stores. *Physiol Rev* 1994; **74**: 595-636
106 **Clapham DE**. Calcium signaling. *Cell* 1995; **80**: 259-268
107 **Choi DW**. Ionic dependence of glutamate neurotoxicity. *J Neurosci* 1987; **7**: 369-379
108 **Berridge MJ**, Irvine RF. Inositol phosphates and cell signalling. *Nature* 1989; **341**: 197-205
109 **Sambrook JF**. The involvement of calcium in transport of secretory proteins from the endoplasmic reticulum. *Cell* 1990; **61**: 197-199
110 **Putney JW**. Capacitative calcium entry revisited. *Cell Calcium* **1990; 11**: 611-624
111 **Putney JW**, Bird GS. The signal for capacitative calcium entry. *Cell* 1993; **75**: 199-201
112 **Hermenegildo C**, Monfort P, Felipo V. Activation of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors in rat brain in vivo following acute ammonia intoxication: characterization by in vivo brain microdialysis. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 709-715
113 **Nicholls DG**, Budd SL. Mitochondria and neuronal survival. *Physiol Rev* 2000; **80**: 315-360
114 **Hepler PK**. Calcium and mitosis. *Int Rev Cytol* 1992; **138**: 239-268
115 **Hepler PK**. The role of calcium in cell division. *Cell Calcium* 1994; **16**: 322-330
116 **Nicotera P**, Zhivotovsky B, Bellomo G, Orrenius S. Ion signalling in apoptosis. In: Apoptosis. New York: Plenum Press, 1994: 97-110
117 **Nicotera P**, Bellomo G, Orrenius S. Calcium-mediated mechanisms in chemically induced cell death. *Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol* 1992; **32**: 449-470
118 **Giordano FJ**, He H, McDonough P, Meyer M, Sayen MR, Dillmann WH. Adenovirus-mediated gene transfer reconstitutes depressed sarcoplasmic reticulum Ca2+-ATPase levels and shortens prolonged cardiac myocyte Ca2+ transients.

Circulation 1997; **96**: 400-403
119 **Cheung KH**, Shineman D, Müller M, Cárdenas C, Mei L, Yang J, Tomita T, Iwatsubo T, Lee VM, Foskett JK. Mechanism of Ca2+ disruption in Alzheimer's disease by presenilin regulation of InsP3 receptor channel gating. *Neuron* 2008; **58**: 871-883
120 **Wittmann M**, Queisser G, Eder A, Wiegert JS, Bengtson CP, Hellwig A, Wittum G, Bading H. Synaptic activity induces dramatic changes in the geometry of the cell nucleus: interplay between nuclear structure, histone H3 phosphorylation, and nuclear calcium signaling. *J Neurosci* 2009; **29**: 14687-14700
121 **Queisser G**, Wiegert S, Bading H. Structural dynamics of the cell nucleus: basis for morphology modulation of nuclear calcium signaling and gene transcription. *Nucleus* **2011; 2**: 98-104
122 **Bootman MD**, Fearnley C, Smyrnias I, MacDonald F, Roderick HL. An update on nuclear calcium signalling. *J Cell Sci* 2009; **122**: 2337-2350
123 **Ma TS**, Mann DL, Lee JH, Gallinghouse GJ. SR compartment calcium and cell apoptosis in SERCA overexpression. *Cell Calcium* **1999; 26**: 25-36
124 **Panickar KS**, Jayakumar AR, Rama Rao KV, Norenberg MD. Downregulation of the 18-kDa translocator protein: effects on the ammonia-induced mitochondrial permeability transition and cell swelling in cultured astrocytes. *Glia* 2007; **55**: 1720-1727
125 **Roselló DM**, Balestrasse K, Coll C, Coll S, Tallis S, Gurni A, Tomaro ML, Lemberg A, Perazzo JC. Oxidative stress and hippocampus in a low-grade hepatic encephalopathy model: protective effects of curcumin. *Hepatol Res* 2008; **38**: 1148-1153
126 **Parola AL**, Yamamura HI, Laird HE. Peripheral-type benzodiazepine receptors. *Life Sci* 1993; **52**: 1329-1342
127 **Casellas P**, Galiegue S, Basile AS. Peripheral benzodiazepine receptors and mitochondrial function. *Neurochem Int* 2002; **40**: 475-486
128 **Itzhak Y**, Roig-Cantisano A, Dombro RS, Norenberg MD. Acute liver failure and hyperammonemia increase peripheral-type benzodiazepine receptor binding and pregnenolone synthesis in mouse brain. *Brain Res* 1995; **705**: 345-348
129 **Shiraishi T**, Black KL, Ikezaki K, Becker DP. Peripheral benzodiazepine induces morphological changes and proliferation of mitochondria in glioma cells. *J Neurosci Res* 1991; **30**: 463-474
130 **Hirsch JD**, Beyer CF, Malkowitz L, Beer B, Blume AJ. Mitochondrial benzodiazepine receptors mediate inhibition of mitochondrial respiratory control. *Mol Pharmacol* 1989; **35**: 157-163
131 **Friberg H**, Wieloch T. Mitochondrial permeability transition in acute neurodegeneration. *Biochimie* **2002; 84**: 241-250
132 **Azarashvili T**, Grachev D, Krestinina O, Evtodienko Y, Yurkov I, Papadopoulos V, Reiser G. The peripheral-type benzodiazepine receptor is involved in control of Ca2+-induced permeability transition pore opening in rat brain mitochondria. *Cell Calcium* 2007; **42**: 27-39
133 **Bélanger M**, Desjardins P, Chatauret N, Rose C, Butterworth RF. Mild hypothermia prevents brain edema and attenuates up-regulation of the astrocytic benzodiazepine receptor in experimental acute liver failure. *J Hepatol* 2005; **42**: 694-699
134 **Cagnon L**, Braissant O. Role of caspases, calpain and cdk5 in ammonia-induced cell death in developing brain cells. *Neurobiol Dis* 2008; **32**: 281-292
135 **Cagnon L**, Braissant O. Hyperammonemia-induced toxicity for the developing central nervous system. *Brain Res Rev* 2007; **56**: 183-197
136 **Braissant O**. Ammonia toxicity to the brain: effects on creatine metabolism and transport and protective roles of creatine. *Mol Genet Metab* 2010; **100** Suppl 1: S53-S58
137 **Todde V**, Veenhuis M, van der Klei IJ. Autophagy: principles and significance in health and disease. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2009; **1792**: 3-13
138 **Kosenko E**, Kaminsky Y, Solomadin I, Marov N, Venediktova N, Felipo V, Montoliu C. Acute ammonia neurotoxicity in vivo involves increase in cytoplasmic protein P53 without alterations in other markers of apoptosis. *J Neurosci Res* 2007; **85**: 2491-2499
139 **Kimelberg HK**, Anderson E, Kettenmann H. Swelling-induced changes in electrophysiological properties of cultured astrocytes and oligodendrocytes. II. Whole-cell currents. *Brain Res* 1990; **529**: 262-268
140 **Kimelberg HK**, Goderie SK, Higman S, Pang S, Waniewski RA. Swelling-induced release of glutamate, aspartate, and taurine from astrocyte cultures. *J Neurosci* 1990; **10**: 1583-1591
141 **Schliess F,** Häussinger D. The cellular hydration state: role in apoptosis and proliferation. Signal Transduction-Receptors, Mediators and Genes. *Signal Transduction* 2005; **6**: 297-302
142 **Yuan J**, Yankner BA. Apoptosis in the nervous system. *Nature* 2000; **407**: 802-809
143 **Jessica Chen M**, Sepramaniam S, Armugam A, Shyan Choy M, Manikandan J, Melendez AJ, Jeyaseelan K, Sang Cheung N. Water and ion channels: crucial in the initiation and progression of apoptosis in central nervous system? *Curr Neuropharmacol* 2008; **6**: 102-116
144 **Debska G**, May R, Kicińska A, Szewczyk A, Elger CE, Kunz WS. Potassium channel openers depolarize hippocampal mitochondria. *Brain Res* 2001; **892**: 42-50
145 **Jentsch TJ**. Neuronal KCNQ potassium channels: physiology and role in disease. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 2000; **1**: 21-30
146 **Xiao AY**, Wei L, Xia S, Rothman S, Yu SP. Ionic mechanism of ouabain-induced concurrent apoptosis and necrosis in individual cultured cortical neurons. *J Neurosci* 2002; **22**: 1350-1362
147 **d'Anglemont de Tassigny A**, Souktani R, Henry P, Ghaleb B, Berdeaux A. Volume-sensitive chloride channels (ICl,vol) mediate doxorubicin-induced apoptosis through apoptotic volume decrease in cardiomyocytes. *Fundam Clin Pharmacol* 2004; **18**: 531-538
148 **da Silva CM**, Macías-García B, Miró-Morán A, González-Fernández L, Morillo-Rodriguez A, Ortega-Ferrusola C, Gallardo-Bolaños JM, Stilwell G, Tapia JA, Peña FJ. Melatonin reduces lipid peroxidation and apoptotic-like changes in stallion spermatozoa. *J Pineal Res* 2011; **51**: 172-179
149 **He W**, Li H, Min X, Liu J, Hu B, Hou S, Wang J. Activation of volume-sensitive Cl(-) channel is involved in carboplatin-induced apoptosis in human lung adenocarcinoma cells. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2010; **9**: 885-891
150 **Bortner CD**, Sifre MI, Cidlowski JA. New approaches for determining apoptotic volume decrease in cells. *Methods Enzymol* 2007; **428**: 161-181
151 **Abdullaev IF**, Rudkouskaya A, Schools GP, Kimelberg HK, Mongin AA. Pharmacological comparison of swelling-activated excitatory amino acid release and Cl- currents in cultured rat astrocytes. *J Physiol* 2006; **572**: 677-689
152 **Davidson MM**, Walker WF, Hernandez-Rosa E. The m.3243A> G mtDNA mutation is pathogenic in an in vitro model of the human blood brain barrier. *Mitochondrion* 2009; **9**: 463-470
153 **Finsterer J**. Genetic, pathogenetic, and phenotypic implications of the mitochondrial A3243G tRNALeu(UUR) mutation. *Acta Neurol Scand* 2007; **116**: 1-14
154 **Kaufmann P**, Shungu DC, Sano MC, Jhung S, Engelstad K, Mitsis E, Mao X, Shanske S, Hirano M, DiMauro S, De Vivo DC. Cerebral lactic acidosis correlates with neurological impairment in MELAS. *Neurology* 2004; **62**: 1297-1302
155 **Li J**, Zhou K, Meng X, Wu Q, Li S, Liu Y, Wang J. Increased ROS generation and SOD activity in heteroplasmic tissues of transmitochondrial mice with A3243G mitochondrial DNA mutation. *Genet Mol Res* 2008; **7**: 1054-1062

156 **Sproule DM**, Kaufmann P. Mitochondrial encephalopathy, lactic acidosis, and strokelike episodes: basic concepts, clinical phenotype, and therapeutic management of MELAS syndrome. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2008; **1142**: 133-158

157 **Tanji K**, Kunimatsu T, Vu TH, Bonilla E. Neuropathological features of mitochondrial disorders. *Semin Cell Dev Biol* 2001; **12**: 429-439

158 **Pallotti F**, Baracca A, Hernandez-Rosa E, Walker WF, Solaini G, Lenaz G, Melzi D'Eril GV, Dimauro S, Schon EA, Davidson MM. Biochemical analysis of respiratory function in cybrid cell lines harbouring mitochondrial DNA mutations. *Biochem J* 2004; **384**: 287-293

159 **Pang CY**, Lee HC, Wei YH. Enhanced oxidative damage in human cells harboring A3243G mutation of mitochondrial DNA: implication of oxidative stress in the pathogenesis of mitochondrial diabetes. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2001; **54** Suppl 2: S45-S56

160 **Lagrange P**, Romero IA, Minn A, Revest PA. Transendothelial permeability changes induced by free radicals in an in vitro model of the blood-brain barrier. *Free Radic Biol Med* 1999; **27**: 667-672

161 **Scorticati C**, Perazzo JC, Rettori V, McCann SM, De Laurentiis A. Role of ammonia and nitric oxide in the decrease in plasma prolactin levels in prehepatic portal hypertensive male rats. *Neuroimmunomodulation* 2006; **13**: 152-159

162 **Scoville WB**, Milner B. Loss of recent memory after bilateral hippocampal lesions. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1957; **20**: 11-21

163 **Kandel ER**. The biology of memory: a forty-year perspective. *J Neurosci* 2009; **29**: 12748-12756

164 **Mei B**, Li F, Gu Y, Cui Z, Tsien JZ. NMDA receptors are not required for pattern completion during associative memory recall. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e19326

165 **Lemberg A**, Eizayaga FX, Vatta M, Dominguez A, Romay S, Bianciotti LG, Sansó G, Fernández B. Prehepatic portal hypertension in rats modifies norepinephrine metabolism in hypothalamus, medulla oblongata and portal vein. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38**: 1259-1262

166 **Arranz CT**, Balaszczuk AM, Costa MA, Eizayaga FX, Romay S, Mongelli C, Lemberg A. Systemic baroreflex alterations in prehepatic portal hypertensive conscious rats. *Arch Physiol Biochem* 1995; **103**: 422-426

167 **Lemberg A**, Perazzo J, Romay S, Eizayaga F, Vatta M, Rodriguez-Fermepin M, Bianciotti L, Monserrat A, Fernandez B. Norepinephrine uptake is enhanced in discrete telencephalic and diencephalic areas and nuclei in prehepatic portal hypertensive rats. *Brain Res Bull* 1998; **45**: 153-156

168 **Perazzo JC,** Lores-Arnaiz S, Fernandez M, Lago N, Lemberg A. Prehepatic Portal Hipertension and mitochondrial dysfunction in brain hippocampus. In: Häussinger D, Kircheiss G, Schliess F, editors. Hepatic Encephalopathy and Nitrogen Metabolism. London-Heidelberg: Springer, 2006: 190-202

169 **Yirmiya R**, Goshen I. Immune modulation of learning, memory, neural plasticity and neurogenesis. *Brain Behav Immun* 2011; **25**: 181-213

170 **Reichenberg A**, Yirmiya R, Schuld A, Kraus T, Haack M, Morag A, Pollmächer T. Cytokine-associated emotional and cognitive disturbances in humans. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 2001; **58**: 445-452

171 **Beattie EC**, Stellwagen D, Morishita W, Bresnahan JC, Ha BK, Von Zastrow M, Beattie MS, Malenka RC. Control of synaptic strength by glial TNFalpha. *Science* 2002; **295**: 2282-2285

172 **Stellwagen D**, Malenka RC. Synaptic scaling mediated by glial TNF-alpha. *Nature* 2006; **440**: 1054-1059

173 **Ortiz M**, Córdoba J, Jacas C, Flavià M, Esteban R, Guardia J. Neuropsychological abnormalities in cirrhosis include learning impairment. *J Hepatol* 2006; **44**: 104-110

174 **Weissenborn K**, Heidenreich S, Giewekemeyer K, Rückert N, Hecker H. Memory function in early hepatic encephalopathy. *J Hepatol* 2003; **39**: 320-325

175 **Hilsabeck RC**, Hassanein TI, Carlson MD, Ziegler EA, Perry W. Cognitive functioning and psychiatric symptomatology in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *J Int Neuropsychol Soc* 2003; **9**: 847-854

176 **Powell EM**, Mars WM, Levitt P. Hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor is a motogen for interneurons migrating from the ventral to dorsal telencephalon. *Neuron* 2001; **30**: 79-89

177 **Wheeler MD**, Kono H, Yin M, Nakagami M, Uesugi T, Arteel GE, Gäbele E, Rusyn I, Yamashina S, Froh M, Adachi Y, Iimuro Y, Bradford BU, Smutney OM, Connor HD, Mason RP, Goyert SM, Peters JM, Gonzalez FJ, Samulski RJ, Thurman RG. The role of Kupffer cell oxidant production in early ethanol-induced liver disease. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2001; **31**: 1544-1549

178 **Bataller R**, Brenner DA. Liver fibrosis. *J Clin Invest* 2005; **115**: 209-218

179 **Méndez M**, Méndez-López M, López L, Aller MA, Arias J, Arias JL. Portosystemic hepatic encephalopathy model shows reversal learning impairment and dysfunction of neural activity in the prefrontal cortex and regions involved in motivated behavior. *J Clin Neurosci* 2011; **18**: 690-694

180 **Welzl H**, Stork O. Cell adhesion molecules: key players in memory consolidation? *News Physiol Sci* 2003; **18**: 147-150

181 **Monfort P**, Muñoz MD, Felipo V. Molecular mechanisms of the alterations in NMDA receptor-dependent long-term potentiation in hyperammonemia. *Metab Brain Dis* 2005; **20**: 265-274

182 **Lynch MA**. Long-term potentiation and memory. *Physiol Rev* 2004; **84**: 87-136

183 **Bosoi CR**, Rose CF. Identifying the direct effects of ammonia on the brain. *Metab Brain Dis* 2009; **24**: 95-102

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zhang DN

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.66

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): 66-67
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

EDITORIAL

Liver diseases in developing countries

Francesca Cainelli

Francesca Cainelli, School of Medicine, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Botswana, PO Box 00713, Gaborone, Botswana
Author contributions: Cainelli F conceived and wrote the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Francesca Cainelli, MD, School of Medicine, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Botswana, PO Box 00713, Gaborone,
Botswana. cainellifrancesca@gmail.com
Telephone: +267-3554563 Fax: +267-3105979
Received: February 28, 2011 Revised: November 9, 2011
Accepted: November 16, 2011
Published online: March 27, 2012

Abstract

Liver diseases are an important and largely neglected health issue in low and middle income countries, which carry the highest burden. In this Topic Highlight, experts review hepatitis B and E, alcoholic liver disease, hepatic diseases in human immunodeficiency virus -infected individuals, hepatocellular carcinoma. Numerous gaps in our knowledge that need to be filled are outlined and feasible solutions to the several problems related to diagnosis and management of liver diseases in developing countries are suggested.

Key words: Liver diseases; Developing countries; Hepatitis; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Cirrhosis

Cainelli F. Liver diseases in developing countries. *World J Hepatol* 2012; 4(3): 66-67 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v4/i3/66.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.66

INTRODUCTION

Liver diseases are an important and largely neglected health issue in developing countries, which carry the highest burden but receive little attention. The scientific literature is engulfed with manuscripts describing the apparently high load of liver diseases in developed, high income countries, and one can get the misleading impression that liver diseases are prominent in those very countries where they are not.

The aim of this Topic Highlight is to raise awareness of the burden of liver diseases in low and middle income countries.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Hepatitis B virus infection is a huge health problem in many low and middle income countries. Franco *et al*[1] (Department of Public Health, Tor Vergata University, Rome, Italy) outline that the most common route of infection remains vertical transmission from mother to child, and that screening of all pregnant women and passive immunization with human hepatitis B immunoglobulins are not affordable for many developing countries. Even anti-hepatitis B vaccination is not affordable for some countries. Abbas *et al*[2] (Department of Hepatogastroenterology, Sindh Institute of Urology and Transplantation, Karachi, Pakistan) advocate for a definition of the minimal requirements for delivery of care to patients with chronic hepatitis B and call for the establishment of research institutions that can ascertain the natural history and response to treatment in developing countries. They rightly outline that the mere extrapolation of treatment protocols used in developed countries is of little use due to lack of resources.

Teshale *et al*[3] from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Division of Viral Hepatitis, Atlanta, United States, review hepatitis E epidemiology and draw attention to the fact that this virus is responsible for major outbreaks of acute hepatitis in developing countries, especially in Africa and Asia. Although more than one vaccine candidate has been shown to be safe and efficacious in clinical trials, none are currently available for use in the very countries where they are most needed. There is no specific therapy for acute hepatitis E, and the death

rate is considerable in pregnant women.

Alcohol consumption is high in developing countries and alcoholic liver disease is therefore obviously present. However, this form of liver disease receives little, if any, attention in low income countries. Bruha[4] from Charles University in Prague, Czech Republic, reminds us that severe acute alcoholic hepatitis is associated with a mortality rate of up to 50%, and that treatment of this form is extremely difficult. There is an absolute need for abstaining from alcohol of patients with chronic liver disease; the lack of policies to this effect is a serious concern that must be addressed.

Crane *et al*[5] (Monash University and The Alfred Hospital, Melbourne, Australia) describe liver disease in HIV-infected individuals, in the absence of co-infection with HBV or HCV, as an emerging issue. While antiretroviral therapy-related toxicities are an obvious cause, evidence is emerging that HIV infection may have a direct impact on the pathogenesis of liver fibrosis, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and non-alcoholic steatohepatitis.

Professor Kew *et al*[6] (Department of Medicine, University of Cape Town and Groote Schuur Hospital, Cape Town, South Africa) describes a gloomy but realistic picture of hepatocellular carcinoma, a tumor that occurs commonly and with increasing frequency in developing countries, where it also carries an especially poor prognosis. Non implementation of hepatitis B vaccination and unavoidable dietary exposure to aflatoxin B1 play an important etiological role. Unfortunately, prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma in developing countries is unlikely in the foreseeable future.

CONCLUSION

I hope that the readers will enjoy this Topic Highlight and will be stimulated to conduct research that will fill the numerous gaps in our knowledge and will suggest feasible solutions to the several problems highlighted.

REFERENCES

1 **Franco E**, Bagnato B, Marino MG, Meleleo C, Serino L, Zaratti L. Hepatitis B: Epidemiology and prevention in developing countries. *World J Hepatol* 2012; **4**: 74-80

2 **Abbas Z**, Siddiqui AR. Management of hepatitis B in developing countries. *World J Hepatol* 2011; **3**: 292-299

3 **Teshale EH**, Hu DJ. Hepatitis E: Epidemiology and prevention. *World J Hepatol* 2011; **3**: 285-291

4 **Bruha R**, Dvorak K, Petrtyl J. Alcoholic liver disease. *World J Hepatol* 2012; **4**: 81-90

5 **Crane M**, Iser D, Lewin RS. Human immunodeficiency virus infection and the liver. *World J Hepatol* 2012; **4**: 91-98

6 **Kew MC**. Hepatocellular carcinoma in developing countries: Prevention, diagnosis and treatment. *World J Hepatol* 2012; **4**: 99-104

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Xiong L

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.68

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): 68-73
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Francesca Cainelli, MD, *Series Editor*

Hepatitis A: Epidemiology and prevention in developing countries

Elisabetta Franco, Cristina Meleleo, Laura Serino, Debora Sorbara, Laura Zaratti

Elisabetta Franco, Laura Zaratti, Department of Public Health, University Tor Vergata, via Montpellier 1, 00133 Rome, Italy
Cristina Meleleo, Laura Serino, Debora Sorbara, Specialization School for Hygiene and Preventive Medicine, University Tor Vergata, via Montpellier 1, 00133 Rome, Italy
Author contributions: Franco E designed the research; Meleleo C, Serino L, Sorbara D and Zaratti L performed the literature search and evaluation; all authors contributed to writing the paper.
Correspondence to: Elisabetta Franco, MD, Professor of Hygiene, Department of Public Health, University Tor Vergata, via Montpellier 1, 00133 Rome, Italy. franco@med.uniroma2.it
Telephone: +39-06-72596122 Fax: +39-06-2025285
Received: February 28, 2011 Revised: March 14, 2012
Accepted: March 17, 2012
Published online: March 27, 2012

Abstract

Hepatitis A is the most common form of acute viral hepatitis in the world. Major geographical differences in endemicity of hepatitis A are closely related to hygienic and sanitary conditions and other indicators of the level of socioeconomic development. The anti-hepatitis A virus (HAV) seroprevalence rate is presently decreasing in many parts of the world, but in less developed regions and in several developing countries, HAV infection is still very common in the first years of life and seroprevalence rates approach 100%. In areas of intermediate endemicity, the delay in the exposure to the virus has generated a huge number of susceptible adolescents and adults and significantly increased the average age at infection. As the severity of disease increases with age, this has led to outbreaks of hepatitis A. Several factors contribute to the decline of the infection rate, including rising socioeconomic levels, increased access to clean water and the availability of a hepatitis A vaccine that was developed in the 1990s. For populations with a high proportion of susceptible adults, implementing vaccination programs may be considered. In this report, we review available epidemiological data and implementation of vaccination strategies, particularly focusing on developing countries.

Key words: Hepatitis A; Developing countries; Endemicity; Seroprevalence; Vaccine

Peer reviewers: Krishnan Rajeshwari, Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Maulana Azad Medical College, New Delhi 110002, India; Yasemin Hatice Balaban, Professor, Hacettepe University, 06570 Ankara, Turkey

Franco E, Meleleo C, Serino L, Sorbara D, Zaratti L. Hepatitis A: Epidemiology and prevention in developing countries. *World J Hepatol* 2012; 4(3): 68-73 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v4/i3/68.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.68

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis A is the most common form of acute viral hepatitis worldwide. The first description of hepatitis (epidemic jaundice) is generally attributed to Hippocrates and outbreaks of hepatitis A have been recognized for centuries, affecting both military and civilian populations[1].

The hepatitis A virus (HAV) is a small non-enveloped single-stranded RNA virus. It is thermostable and acid-resistant. For some time after its identification, HAV was thought to be an enterovirus; in 1991, it was sub classified as a member of the Hepatovirus genus of the family Picornaviridae. HAV replicates in hepatocytes and interferes with liver function, sparking an immune response that causes liver inflammation. HAV is acquired by the fecal-oral route. Person-to-person transmission is com-

mon and generally limited to close contacts[2].

A typical symptomatic presentation includes non specific prodromal symptoms with variable combinations of fever, malaise, weakness, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, arthralgias and myalgias. Prodromal symptoms tend to decrease with the onset of jaundice, although anorexia, malaise and weakness may persist or increase transiently. Jaundice lasts for several weeks and is followed by a convalescent period. The peak infectivity occurs during the two weeks before the onset of jaundice or elevation of liver enzyme levels when the concentration of virus in the stool is highest. When jaundice appears, the viral concentration in the stool declines and most patients are noninfectious after one week[2,3].

The expression of clinical symptoms varies greatly with the age of the infected person. Approximately 50% of children with hepatitis A under the age of 6 years are asymptomatic, with most of the remaining having mild symptoms, often not recognized as hepatitis. Less than 5% of children below 4 years of age and less than 10% of children between ages 4 and 6 years with hepatitis A develop jaundice. Starting from 6 years of age to adulthood, more than 75% develop the characteristic illness traits with jaundice and dark urine[3,4]. Although rare, HAV infection can cause acute liver failure and death (in approximately 0.2% of clinical cases) and this risk increases with age and the presence of chronic liver disease[5].

Acute hepatitis A symptoms are similar to those of other viral hepatitis and serological testing for the detection of immunoglobulin M (IgM) antibodies to HAV (anti-HAV) is required to confirm the diagnosis. IgM anti-HAV is usually detectable when symptoms appear and concentrations decline to undetectable levels within 6 mo for most patients. However, cases of patients that test positive for IgM anti-HAV more than 1 year after infection have been reported. Immunoglobulin G (IgG) anti-HAV appears early in the course of the infection and remains detectable throughout the person's lifetime. Total anti-HAV tests are often used in epidemiological investigations or to detect susceptibility to HAV but they do not identify acute infection. Vaccines, available since the early 1990s, are not yet widely used, therefore most individuals with anti-HAV acquired immunity through infection[3].

GLOBAL EPIDEMIOLOGY OF HEPATITIS A

Approximately 1.5 million clinical cases of hepatitis A occur worldwide annually but the rate of infection is probably as much as ten times higher. The incidence rate is strongly related to socioeconomic indicators and access to safe drinking water: as incomes rise and access to clean water increases, the incidence of HAV infection decreases. The association of HAV infection risk with standards of hygiene and sanitation, the age-dependent clinical expression of the disease, and lifelong immunity determine the different patterns of HAV infection observed worldwide.

The HAV endemicity level for a population is defined by the results of age-seroprevalence surveys; a systematic review on the global prevalence of HAV infection was recently published by the World Health Organization (WHO)[6].

Areas of the world can be characterized as having high, intermediate and low endemicity for hepatitis A. In less developed countries with very poor sanitary and hygienic conditions, HAV infection is highly endemic and most persons become infected in early childhood. Because infection occurs at an early age when the disease is often asymptomatic, reported rates of the disease in these areas are relatively low and outbreaks are not common. Areas of high endemicity include most of Africa, Asia and Central and South America. Conditions which contribute to the propagation of the virus among young children in these areas include household crowding, poor levels of sanitation and inadequate water supplies[3,6,7].

In developing countries and some regions of developed countries, which include Eastern Europe, parts of Africa, Asia and America, sanitary and hygienic conditions vary and some children avoid infection during early childhood. Peak rates of infection commonly occur in later childhood or adolescence. Paradoxically, since HAV transmission occurs in these areas in older age groups, reported rates of hepatitis A can be higher than in less developed countries where HAV transmission is more highly endemic. Person-to-person transmission in large community-wide epidemics accounts for a significant amount of the disease in these areas. These outbreaks are very difficult to control with standard measures like hand washing and immune globulin administration to contacts of cases. Outbreaks are also observed in child care centers and schools and occasionally large food borne epidemics occur, such as in Shanghai in 1988 where the outbreak was associated with shellfish consumption[8]. In some areas, conditions are such that disease trends are cyclical; HAV is transmitted in community-wide outbreaks until the population is exhausted of susceptible persons, after which there is a period of several years until a new cohort of susceptible children reaches the age when clinical disease is more frequent[3,6,7].

In most developed countries, such as North America, Western Europe, Australia and Japan, sanitation and hygienic conditions are generally good and infection rates in children are generally low. Peak rates of infection and reported disease tend to be among adolescents and young adults. In these areas, large community-wide outbreaks with extended person-to-person transmission can still contribute significantly to the burden of hepatitis A disease. In addition, occasional outbreaks in child care centers or residential institutions and food borne or waterborne epidemics can occur. In some countries with very low prevalence (e.g. Northern Europe), disease predominates among specific adult risk groups: travelers to countries where hepatitis A is endemic; intravenous drug users; and men with a history of homosexual behavior. The prevalence of anti-HAV increases gradually with age, primarily reflecting declining incidence, changing endemicity and

a resultant lower childhood infection rate over time[2-4,6,9,10].

PREVALENCE OF HEPATITIS A: FOCUS ON DEVELOPING COUNTRIES

Africa

Information on HAV infection in Africa is limited. Available data shows that most of Africa remains a high endemicity region, with the exception of subpopulations in some areas, such as white people in South Africa. In the 1990s, almost all black children in South Africa were anti-HAV-positive by the age of 12 years and almost 100% of black adults had antibodies to HAV before the age of 20 years, while only 30%-40% of white adults were anti-HAV-positive by the age of 20 years, rising to about 60% by the age of 40-49 years[11,12]. North Africa has an intermediate level of anti-HAV seroprevalence. Studies from the 1980s showed nearly universal immunity in many countries; a 100% immunity rate by age 10 years was found in Algeria and nearly 100% of adults were anti-HAV positive in Morocco. More recent data shows that, in general, urban areas have experienced a decline in hepatitis A infection, while rates in rural areas remain high and the prevalence is generally lower in higher social classes[6].

The significant increase in the seroprevalence with older age and lower social class was confirmed in a 2008 study in which 296 Egyptian children aged 2.5-18 years of different social classes were tested to evaluate whether to give HAV vaccine early in life or to leave children to acquire natural immunity. Overall, 61.4% were seropositive; anti-HAV was detected in 27.3% of high and in 81% of low social class children aged < 6 years[13].

In Tunisia, child infection rates remain high with differences between urban and rural settings, depending on the development of the areas considered. In 2002, the overall seroprevalence in an area of central Tunisia was 60% among students aged 5-23 years (44% in children < 10 years old, 58% in those 10-15 years of age and 83% in those > 15 years of age). Regardless of age, seroprevalence rates for HAV were significantly lower in urban areas than in sub-urban and rural areas. At the age of 10, 21.3% of school children living in urban areas and 87.7% of those living in rural areas had antibodies to HAV[14]. In a larger study performed in three different regions of Tunisia in 2007, HAV seroprevalence was 84.0%, 90.5% and 91.7% in three groups with a mean age of 6.94, 12.84 and 20.71 years respectively[15].

In its recent report, WHO presents the information about HAV seroprevalence in North Africa and Middle East together because the trend of the infection is the same in both regions. In Yemen in the 1980s, a near 100% seroprevalence was detected, while in a recent study from Kuwait the prevalence of anti-HAV was 28% in adults. The highest prevalence was among the group with non educated parents, which reflects the relationship of the disease to low social background[6,16].

Sub-Saharan Africa has some of the highest anti-HAV prevalence rates in the world and nearly all older children and adults are naturally immunized. In Liberia in the late 1970s, more than 80% of 4-5 year olds had antibodies to HAV, which suggested an incidence rate of 45% per year between the first and fourth birthdays. In the same period in Senegal, nearly 100% of children had antibodies to HAV by age 5 years and in Nigeria more than 90% of adults had HAV antibodies. In the 1990s in Cameroon, adult prevalence was greater than 90% and in Sierra Leone a study of urban schoolchildren found a 97% prevalence rate. Although recent studies are not available, it is likely that Sub-Saharan Africa continues to have a very high HAV incidence rate and, correspondingly, a very high seroprevalence rate from childhood[6,7].

Asia

HAV seroprevalence rates vary considerably among countries in Asia, with some continuing to have high rates and others making a transition to moderate or low incidence.

Low endemicity areas include Japan and others countries such as Taiwan where the prevalence has decreased markedly in the last years. In fact, while in the 1970s the prevalence of anti-HAV in adults was more than 90%, later studies show that in the Taipei metropolitan area, the prevalence was nearly 0% and in the rural areas only very few adolescents and young adults showed signs of previous infection[17].

In the moderate endemicity countries, such as Korea, Indonesia, Thailand, Sri Lanka and Malaysia, the available data shows that the incidence rate may be decreasing, at least in urban areas, and the age at infection increases from very early to late childhood, which increases the risk of outbreaks. The number of cases of adult hepatitis A has progressively been increasing during the last several decades in Korea. In addition, the pattern of age-specific seroprevalence of anti-HAV has changed with economic growth. The prevalence of anti-HAV in the 10-50 year age range has declined rapidly during the last 3 decades. As a result, this age group has a high risk for HAV infection and clinically overt hepatitis A is increasing in adolescents and adults[6,18,19].

In China and India, the two most populous countries in the world that have shown a very rapid socio-economic development in the last years, many high endemicity areas for HAV infection coexist with others, making a transition to moderate incidence[6,7,20].

Hepatitis A has been a relevant public health problem in China. More than 300 000 cases of clinical hepatitis A were reported during a shellfish-associated outbreak in Shanghai in 1988; however, in the following two decades, the annual national incidence rate of hepatitis A dropped dramatically. In urban China in the early 1990s, although up to one-half of 10 year olds had antibodies to hepatitis A, the seroprevalence in most cities did not reach 100%, even for those aged 60 and above, leaving susceptible population groups and creating the possibility of outbreaks. In 2006, two major hepatitis A incidents occurred in China: one was an outbreak in a school in the

south and the other was an epidemic involving multiple HAV strains in the Autonomous Region of northwestern China[21,22].

In India, heterogeneous pockets of susceptible and exposed individuals may co-exist in different regions. About 15 years ago, the cord blood anti-HAV level in Indian newborns was almost 100%, which in turn reflected the maternal antibody prevalence. In recent studies, this level has come down to 50%-60%. Some studies also show that seroprevalence of HAV antibodies was lowest in the 6 mo to 2 year age group and maximum exposure to HAV occurred from 2 to 5 years of age. These observations may be the first indication of the epidemiological shift of the age of acquisition of the HAV infection in the community, even if the current available data does not confirm a consistent decline in childhood HAV seroprevalence rates and increased susceptibility to HAV in young adults[20,23,24].

Nowadays, in many other Asian countries, HAV infection is still highly endemic. Studies from Pakistan in the 1980s, 1990s and 2000s indicate that more than half of children acquire immunity by their preschool years and nearly all adolescents and adults are immune. Between the 1980s and 1990s in Nepal, nearly all adolescents were immune by age 15. In Bangladesh, more than half of 5 year olds and nearly all adolescents and adults are immune[6].

Central and South America

Latin American countries show many of the characteristics of developing countries, with migration from rural communities to cities leading to urban areas of low income and social deprivation. Improvements in public health programs and sanitary conditions have had an impact on the epidemiological patterns of HAV infection in developing economies and so previous studies showing Latin America to be an area of high endemicity with almost universal infection before the age of 10 years may no longer be valid. It is, nevertheless, difficult to estimate the exact incidence of hepatitis A because of the high proportion of subclinical infection and anicteric disease and the different surveillance programs. It has been estimated that the real incidence is 10 times higher than that reported[25-27].

The endemicity patterns continue to be high in several Latin America countries, such as the Central and the Caribbean areas, where studies performed between 1990 and 1999 showed a very high seroprevalence rate and found that more than half of the children had developed immunity by their second birthday and nearly all adults in both rural and urban areas were immune to HAV[6,7].

Data from recent studies has shown that the prevalence of anti-HAV is decreasing in several South American countries, including Argentina, Bolivia, Brazil, Venezuela, Chile and Uruguay where there has been a shift from high to medium endemicity. This shift was obtained with the improvements in public health programs and sanitary conditions in most parts of these areas[25,26].

A multicenter study carried out between 1996 and 1997 in six countries, including Mexico, the Dominican Republic, Chile, Brazil, Venezuela and Argentina, showed a general decrease in HAV seroprevalence rates compared to previous reports, except for the Dominican Republic where a total prevalence of 89.0% was detected and where the seroprevalence of HAV in children between 1 and 5 years of age was more than 50%. The seroprevalence rates were 81.0% in Mexico, 64.7% in Brazil, 58.1% in Chile, 55.7% in Venezuela and 55.0% in Argentina. In the 5-10 year old age group, seroprevalence rates have also decreased compared with previous reports. This suggests that the epidemiology is shifting from high to intermediate endemicity, with the population susceptible to HAV infection shifting from children to adolescents and adults. Even in Mexico, where anti-HAV prevalence remained high, it was shown that the average age at infection among children hospitalized with hepatitis increased from 6 years in 1991-1993 to 10 years in 2003-2005. Furthermore, data from Brazil, Argentina, Venezuela and Mexico shows that HAV seroprevalence is significantly lower in people living in medium and high socioeconomic conditions[6,7,26].

In the same six countries, a seroepidemiological study was undertaken in 2002-2003 to determine whether this pattern has changed. Analysis of the different age groups showed that at age 6-10 years, 30% of children in Chile and 54%-55% in Brazil, Venezuela and Argentina had been infected, compared with almost 70% in Mexico and 80% in the Dominican Republic. At age 11-15 years, nearly 90% in Mexico and 91% in the Dominican Republic had been infected, compared with 54% in Argentina, 62% in Venezuela, 60% in Brazil and 70% in Chile. By age 31-40 years, over 80% of the populations in all six countries had been exposed to HAV. In all of the countries except Brazil and Venezuela, the seroprevalence of anti-HAV was significantly higher in females than in males. In Mexico, Argentina and Brazil, anti-HAV seroprevalence was significantly higher in the low than in the middle/high socioeconomic groups. Seroprevalence rates in American Indian and Amazonian populations tend to be higher, except for some extremely isolated villages. The results show that there has been a shift from high to medium endemicity of HAV infection in a large part of Latin America, which may result in more clinical cases in adolescents and adults and a greater potential for outbreaks[25,28].

In Bolivia, studies performed in the same rural area in 1987 and ten years later showed a significant decrease in the seroprevalence rates from 86.9% to 28.4% in children less than 5 years of age, although rates in older children and adults remained very high in both study years. Most seroprevalence studies from Mexico and Venezuela performed between the 1990s and 2000s showed that about 50% of 10 year olds were immune but significant differences in seroprevalence were related to socioeconomic status[6].

In Argentina, a sharp reduction in the infection rate was reached by the introduction of a universal HAV vac-

cination program in 2005 and other countries, like Brazil and Chile, are evaluating the possibility of introducing a specific prevention policy[29-31].

PREVENTION OF HEPATITIS A INFECTION

Adequate supplies of safe drinking water and proper disposal of sewage within communities, combined with personal hygiene practices, such as regular hand washing, reduce the spread of HAV[32]. There was a marked reduction in virus transmission in most developed countries several decades ago due to improvements in living standards, better sanitation and environmental conditions. The same trend was observed during the 1990s in several developing countries with increasing economic prosperity. These changes occurred without a specific vaccination strategy, underscoring the critical importance of environmental and personal hygiene and sanitation to prevent fecal-oral transmission of pathogens[17].

Safe and effective inactivated hepatitis A vaccines have been available since 1992 worldwide and are generally used in developed countries to protect risk groups and stop outbreaks. The different vaccines are similar in terms of efficacy and side-effects, highly immunogenic, inducing antibodies to HAV that persist for at least 15 years. Based on current scientific evidence, protection is considered to be life long after a complete hepatitis A vaccination schedule (two doses). Long-term protection after a single dose needs to be further surveyed. The vaccines can be delivered alone or in combination and administered with flexible schedules[33,34].

Vaccination policies range from being part of national universal immunization programs for children to targeting at risk groups.

National immunization programs have been successful, with good coverage rates and declines in incidence up to 90%. Countries or regions that have implemented universal immunization, e.g. Israel, Italy (Puglia), Spain (Catalonia) and the United States, have demonstrated a successful impact on the incidence of hepatitis A; the data for the United States is particularly striking, with evidence of a two-thirds decrease in admissions to hospital and markedly lower medical expenditures between 1996 and 2004. Targeted policies, especially for travelers, have also been shown to be effective and are adopted by different countries and vaccination is included as post-exposure prophylaxis of contacts[35].

In some rapidly developing countries, a new approach to control and prevention of HAV epidemics using a vaccine is being considered. In South America, several trials to evaluate the immunogenicity and safety of inactivated HAV vaccine were performed among Argentinean and Chilean children[36,37], while cost-benefit studies were performed in Brazil, where a hypothetical vaccination strategy was developed to eliminate hepatitis A[28].

In 2005 in Argentina, a universal hepatitis vaccination with a single dose at 12 mo of age was implemented. Argentina's Ministry of Health was established to monitor the impact and follow up the strategy in order to evaluate the need for a second dose. Surveillance data showed an important decline in hepatitis A incidence rates in 2007, when the rate recorded was the lowest in the last 12 years. It is important to consider that these declines since 2005 have been unprecedented in magnitude and have been observed in all age groups and regions, showing a marked herd immunity effect. Brazil and Chile reassessed their immunization policy after cost-effectiveness studies and looking at the successful results of the areas where vaccines were introduced[29].

In China, at the same time when lifestyles began changing and the country's economy boomed, hepatitis A vaccines were introduced. A safe and immunogenic live attenuated HAV vaccine based on the H2 strain has been developed and licensed by the Chinese State Drug Administration. The vaccine meets the requirements of China and WHO for the manufacture of biological substances and is now widely applied in the immunization program to prevent HAV epidemics in China and other countries, such as India[38]. Recent Indian studies with this vaccine have confirmed its high immunogenicity and excellent safety profile[39,40].

Recommendations for the use of the hepatitis A vaccine vary considerably among countries. Guidance from WHO on hepatitis A vaccines emphasizes the need to consider the cost-benefit and sustainability of various prevention strategies in the context of the epidemiological characteristics of the setting where vaccination is being considered. In more developed countries, hepatitis A vaccine is primarily being used to protect persons at increased risk, such as travelers to areas where hepatitis A is endemic, men who have sex with men, or persons with chronic liver disease. Hepatitis A vaccination currently has few indications in the areas of the world where the infection is highly endemic and where most of the population is already immune. In areas of intermediate or high endemicity that are transitioning to a lower level of transmission, shifts in the age-specific patterns of the disease result in an increasing proportion of susceptible adolescents and adults, often in urban areas or higher socioeconomic classes, among whom outbreaks may occur[3,32-40,41].

In these settings, HAV vaccination may be considered on the basis on epidemiological and cost-effectiveness studies.

CONCLUSION

Hepatitis A virus is still a major cause of infection and disease in the world and heterogeneous pockets of susceptible and exposed individuals may co-exist in rapidly developing societies. Thereafter, small localized or large outbreaks of HAV infection will remain a threat in such areas. The situation demands that conclusive guidelines be produced for HAV vaccination in these communities after characterizing them appropriately. WHO is in the process of revising its position paper on hepatitis A, issued in 2000, with a view to: update and evaluate the data

on disease burden, epidemiology, vaccine products and availability and immunization protection; review the use of the vaccine in outbreaks and for contacts of cases; and issue guidance to countries where the prevalence rates are declining from high levels. In determining national policies, the results of appropriate epidemiological and cost-benefit studies need to be carefully considered and the public health impact weighed[18,32].

REFERENCES

1 **Krugman S**. The Gordon Wilson Lecture. The ABC's of viral hepatitis. *Trans Am Clin Climatol Assoc* 1992; **103**: 145-156
2 **Koff RS**. Hepatitis A. *Lancet* 1998; **351**: 1643-1649
3 **Wasley A**, Fiore A, Bell BP. Hepatitis A in the era of vaccination. *Epidemiol Rev* 2006; **28**: 101-111
4 **Shapiro CN**, Margolis HS. Worldwide epidemiology of hepatitis A virus infection. *J Hepatol* 1993; **18** Suppl 2: S11-S14
5 **Keeffe EB**. Hepatitis A and B superimposed on chronic liver disease: vaccine-preventable diseases. *Trans Am Clin Climatol Assoc* 2006; **117**: 227-237; discussion 237-238
6 **WHO.** The Global Prevalence of Hepatitis A Virus Infection and Susceptibility: A Systematic Review. Available from: URL: whqlibdoc.who.int/hq/2010/WHO_IVB_10.01_eng.pdf
7 **Jacobsen KH**, Wiersma ST. Hepatitis A virus seroprevalence by age and world region, 1990 and 2005. *Vaccine* 2010; **28**: 6653-6657
8 **Halliday ML**, Kang LY, Zhou TK, Hu MD, Pan QC, Fu TY, Huang YS, Hu SL. An epidemic of hepatitis A attributable to the ingestion of raw clams in Shanghai, China. *J Infect Dis* 1991; **164**: 852-859
9 **Broman M**, Jokinen S, Kuusi M, Lappalainen M, Roivainen M, Liitsola K, Davidkin I. Epidemiology of hepatitis A in Finland in 1990-2007. *J Med Virol* 2010; **82**: 934-941
10 **Franco E**, Giambi C, Ialacci R, Coppola RC, Zanetti AR. Risk groups for hepatitis A virus infection. *Vaccine* 2003; **21**: 2224-2233
11 **Tufenkeji H**. Hepatitis A shifting epidemiology in the Middle East and Africa. *Vaccine* 2000; **18** Suppl 1: S65-S67
12 **Johnston L**. Hepatitis A and B-A brief overview. *SA Pharmaceutical Journal* 2010; **77**: 40-45
13 **Al-Aziz AM**, Awad MA. Seroprevalence of hepatitis A virus antibodies among a sample of Egyptian children. *East Mediterr Health J* 2008; **14**: 1028-1035
14 **Letaief A**, Kaabia N, Gaha R, Bousaadia A, Lazrag F, Trabelsi H, Ghannem H, Jemni L. Age-specific seroprevalence of hepatitis a among school children in central Tunisia. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2005; **73**: 40-43
15 **Rezig D**, Ouneissa R, Mhiri L, Mejri S, Haddad-Boubaker S, Ben Alaya N, Triki H. [Seroprevalences of hepatitis A and E infections in Tunisia]. *Pathol Biol (Paris)* 2008; **56**: 148-153
16 **Alkhalidi J**, Alenezi B, Al-Mufti S, Hussain E, Askar H, Kemmer N, Neff GW. Seroepidemiology of hepatitis A virus in Kuwait. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 102-105
17 **Chen JY**, Chiang JC, Lu SN, Hung SF, Kao JT, Yen YH, Wang JH. Changing prevalence of anti-hepatitis A virus in adolescents in a rural township in Taiwan. *Chang Gung Med J* 2010; **33**: 321-326
18 **Kim YJ**, Lee HS. Increasing incidence of hepatitis A in Korean adults. *Intervirology* 2010; **53**: 10-14
19 **Moon HW**, Cho JH, Hur M, Yun YM, Choe WH, Kwon SY, Lee CH. Laboratory characteristics of recent hepatitis A in Korea: ongoing epidemiological shift. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 1115-1118
20 **Barzaga BN**. Hepatitis A shifting epidemiology in South-East Asia and China. *Vaccine* 2000; **18** Suppl 1: S61-S64
21 **Cao J**, Wang Y, Song H, Meng Q, Sheng L, Bian T, Mahemuti W, Yierhali A, Omata M, Bi S. Hepatitis A outbreaks in China during 2006: application of molecular epidemiology. *Hepatol Int* 2009; **3**: 356-363
22 **Xu ZY**, Wang XY, Liu CQ, Li YT, Zhuang FC. Decline in the risk of hepatitis A virus infection in China, a country with booming economy and changing lifestyles. *J Viral Hepat* 2008; **15** Suppl 2: 33-37
23 **Mathur P**, Arora NK. Epidemiological transition of hepatitis A in India: issues for vaccination in developing countries. *Indian J Med Res* 2008; **128**: 699-704
24 **Chadha MS**, Lole KS, Bora MH, Arankalle VA. Outbreaks of hepatitis A among children in western India. *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 2009; **103**: 911-916
25 **Tanaka J**. Hepatitis A shifting epidemiology in Latin America. *Vaccine* 2000; **18** Suppl 1: S57-S60
26 **Tapia-Conyer R**, Santos JI, Cavalcanti AM, Urdaneta E, Rivera L, Manterola A, Potin M, Ruttiman R, Tanaka Kido J. Hepatitis A in Latin America: a changing epidemiologic pattern. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 1999; **61**: 825-829
27 **Gentile A**. The need for an evidence-based decision-making process with regard to control of hepatitis A. *J Viral Hepat* 2008; **15** Suppl 2: 16-21
28 **Zahdi MR**, Maluf I, Maluf EM. Hepatitis A: the costs and benefits of the disease prevention by vaccine, Paraná, Brazil. *Braz J Infect Dis* 2009; **13**: 257-261
29 **Vacchino MN**. Incidence of Hepatitis A in Argentina after vaccination. *J Viral Hepat* 2008; **15** Suppl 2: 47-50
30 **Vitral CL**, Souto FJ, Gaspar AM. Changing epidemiology of hepatitis A in Brazil: reassessing immunization policy. *J Viral Hepat* 2008; **15** Suppl 2: 22-25
31 **Valenzuela MT**. [Vaccines against hepatitis A and B in Chile]. *Rev Med Chil* 2009; **137**: 844-851
32 **WHO**. Hepatitis A, 2008. Available from: http: //www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs328/en/
33 **Orli T**, Arguedas MR. Hepatitis A Vaccination. *Current Hepatitis Reports* 2006; **5**: 45-48
34 **Center for Disease Control and Prevention**. Prevention of Hepatitis A Through Active or Passive Immunization: Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). Available from: http: //www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr4812a1.htm
35 **FitzSimons D**, Hendrickx G, Vorsters A, Van Damme P. Hepatitis A and E: update on prevention and epidemiology. *Vaccine* 2010; **28**: 583-588
36 **López EL**, Contrini MM, Mistchenko A, Debbag R. Long-term immunity after two doses of inactivated hepatitis A vaccine, in Argentinean children. *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 2010; **29**: 568-570
37 **Abarca K**, Ibánez I, Perret C, Vial P, Zinsou JA. **Immuno**genicity, safety, and interchangeability of two inactivated hepatitis A vaccines in Chilean children. *Int J Infect Dis* 2008; **12**: 270-277
38 **Zhuang FC**, Qian W, Mao ZA, Gong YP, Jiang Q, Jiang LM, Chen NL, Chai SA, Mao JS. Persistent efficacy of live attenuated hepatitis A vaccine (H2-strain) after a mass vaccination program. *Chin Med J (Engl)* 2005; **118**: 1851-1856
39 **Bhave S**, Bavdekar A, Madan Z, Jha R, Bhure S, Chaudhari J, Pandit A. Evaluation of immunogenicity and tolerability of a live attenuated hepatitis a vaccine in Indian children. *Indian Pediatr* 2006; **43**: 983-987
40 **Faridi MM**, Shah N, Ghosh TK, Sankaranarayanan VS, Arankalle V, Aggarwal A, Sathiyasekaran M, Bhattacharya N, Vasanthi T, Chatterjee S, Choudhury J, Mitra M. Immunogenicity and safety of live attenuated hepatitis A vaccine: a multicentric study. *Indian Pediatr* 2009; **46**: 29-34
41 **Mor Z**, Srur S, Dagan R, Rishpon S. Hepatitis A disease following the implementation of universal vaccination: who is at risk? *J Viral Hepat* 2010; **17**: 293-297

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Wu X

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.74

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): 74-80
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Francesca Cainelli, MD, *Series Editor*

Hepatitis B: Epidemiology and prevention in developing countries

Elisabetta Franco, Barbara Bagnato, Maria Giulia Marino, Cristina Meleleo, Laura Serino, Laura Zaratti

Elisabetta Franco, **Laura Zaratti,** Department of Public Health, University Tor Vergata, via Montpellier 1, 00133 Rome, Italy
Barbara Bagnato, **Maria Giulia Marino,** PhD Program for Methodologies in Preventive Medicine and Therapy, **University** Tor Vergata, via Montpellier 1, 00133 Rome, Italy
Cristina Meleleo, Laura Serino, Specialization School for Hygiene and Preventive Medicine, University Tor Vergata, via Montpellier 1, 00133 Rome, Italy
Author contributions: **Franco E coordinated the work; Bagnato** B, Marino MG, Meleleo C, Serino L and Zaratti L performed the literature search and evaluation; **all authors collaborated in writ**ing the paper.
Correspondence to: Elisabetta Franco, MD, Professor of Hygiene, Department of Public Health, University Tor Vergata, via Montpellier 1, 00133 **Rome, Italy.** franco@med.uniroma2.it
Telephone: +39-06-72596122 Fax: +39-06-2025285
Received: February 28, 2011 Revised: March 14, 2012
Accepted: March 17, 2012
Published online: March 27, 2012

Abstract

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection is a serious global public health problem. The infection may be transmitted through sexual intercourse, parenteral contact or from an infected mother to the baby at birth and, if contracted early in life, may lead to chronic liver disease, including cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. On the basis of the HBV carrier rate, the world can be divided in 3 regions of high, medium and low endemicity. The major concern is about high endemicity countries, where the most common route of infection remains vertical transmission from mother to child. Screening of all pregnant women and passive immunization with human hepatitis B immunoglobulin are not affordable for many developing countries. **The infection rate can** be reduced by modifying behavior, improving individual education, testing all blood donations, assuring asepsis in clinical practice and screening all pregnant women. However, **availability of a safe and efficacious vaccine** and adoption of appropriate immunization strategies are the most effective means to prevent HBV infection and its consequences. The unsolved problem for poorest countries, where the number of people currently infected is high, is the cost of the vaccine. A future challenge is to overcome the social and economic hurdles of maintaining and improving a prevention policy worldwide to reduce the global burden of the disease.

Key words: Hepatitis B; Developing countries; Endemicity; Seroprevalence; Vaccine

Peer reviewers: Frank Tacke, Professor, Department of Medicine III, University Hospital Aachen, Pauwelsstr 30, Aachen 52074, Germany; **Pierluigi Toniutto, Professor, Medical Liver** Transplant Unit, Internal Medicine, University of Udine, Piazzale SM della Misericordia 1, 33100 **Udine, Italy**

Franco E, **Bagnato B, Marino MG, Meleleo C, Serino L, Zaratti** L. **Hepatitis B: Epidemiology and prevention in developing countries.** *World J Hepatol* 2012; 4(3): 74-80 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v4/i3/74.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.74

INTRODUCTION

Viral hepatitis type B is a common, serious disease caused by the hepatitis B virus (HBV), a partially double-stranded DNA virus of the Hepadnaviridae family. Four major serotypes (adw, ayw, adr and ayr) and nine minor subtypes have been serologically identified at the hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) level. The complete sequencing of DNA from HBV isolates worldwide has led to the identification of eight genotypes (from A to H) and a number of subgenotypes, showing different ethno/geographic distributions. HBV genotypes have also been associated with different clinical outcomes and response to interferon therapy. HBV is one of the main causes of hepatic

decompensation, cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Acute disease usually occurs when the immune response is well preserved, while patients with an immunodeficiency are more likely to develop a chronic disease, then becoming a source for new infections. The likelihood that an HBV infection become chronic depends upon the age at which a person is infected, infants and young children being the most likely to develop chronic infection[1,2].

HBV is carried in blood and other body fluids, including saliva, tears, semen and vaginal secretions. Depending on the epidemiological pattern within a geographic area, the main ways of transmission are sexual intercourse, parenteral contact or infection of the baby at birth from an infected mother. Globally, about one third of the population has been infected with HBV; six percent are chronic carriers and over 600 000 people die each year from acute disease or chronic sequelae secondary to HBV infection. On the basis of the HBV carrier rate, the world can be divided in to high, medium and low endemicity regions. The major concern is about high endemicity countries, especially in Asia and Africa, where the most common routes of infection remain vertical transmission from mother to child and horizontal transmission between children[1].

Vaccination is the most effective measure to reduce the global incidence of hepatitis B. Compared to other healthcare interventions, vaccination is an economically advantageous option, both in terms of cost-effectiveness and benefit-cost ratios. In 1991, the World Health Organization (WHO) recommended that all countries introduce a policy of universal hepatitis B vaccination to prevent and control HBV infection and its long term sequelae on a global scale. By the end of 2008, hepatitis B vaccine for infants was introduced nationwide in 177 countries. To date, global hepatitis B vaccine coverage is estimated at 69%[2,3].

GLOBAL PREVALENCE AND EPIDEMIOLOGY OF HEPATITIS B: FOCUS ON DEVELOPING COUNTRIES

HBV infection occurs all over the world. The WHO has estimated that there are more than 2 billion HBV infected people and about 378 million chronic carriers worldwide. There are approximately 620 000 HBV related deaths each year. In addition, approximately 4.5 million new HBV infections occur worldwide each year, of which a quarter progresses to liver disease. In high endemic areas, like central Asian republics, Southeast Asia, Sub-Saharan Africa and the Amazon basin, the HBV carrier rate is over 8%. In low endemic regions, like the United States, Northern Europe, Australia and parts of South America, HBsAg prevalence is less than 2%. The Middle East, some Eastern European countries and the Mediterranean basin are considered areas of intermediate endemicity with a carrier rate between 2% and 8%[1].

In many countries, after the introduction of mass immunization campaigns, the prevalence of HBV notably changed, resulting in a decrease of the HBsAg carrier rate and HCC incidence[2]. It was estimated that liver cancer represents approximately 4% of all new cancer cases diagnosed worldwide and that more than 50% of liver cancers were attributable to HBV. The highest age-adjusted incidence rate (> 20 per 100 000) was reported from Southeast Asian and Sub-Saharan African countries that are endemic for HBV infection. Up to 90% of infants infected during the first year of life and 30%-50% of children infected between one to four years of age develop chronic infections and about 25% of adults who become chronically infected during childhood die from HBV-related liver cancer or cirrhosis[4].

HBV continues to be the major HCC risk factor worldwide, although its importance will continue to decrease during the next decades due to the widespread use of the HBV vaccine in newborns[5-13].

In the last few years, more and more data have been produced in developing countries and areas with high/intermediate endemicity where the most common route of infection is still vertical transmission from mother to child and horizontal transmission between children, particularly siblings[2,14-20].

Globally, perinatal HBV transmission accounts for an estimated 21% of HBV-related deaths, while regionally it ranges from 13% in the Eastern Mediterranean region to 26% in the Western Pacific region. Recent studies in Africa confirm the relatively high HBsAg seroprevalence in pregnant women, irrespective of age, parity, gestational age, residence, history of blood transfusion, dental manipulation, tattooing and circumcision[14]. The maternal-neonatal transmission was studied in Libya where HBsAg positivity was 1.5% and transmission 60.9% and in Ghana with a HBsAg prevalence of 16% but a materno-fetal transmission only in 8.4% of neonates[15,19].

In high endemic areas, other important modes of HBV transmission concern some high-risk groups such as health care workers (HCWs)[21-25], but also sexual contacts[26] and intravenous drug use[27-32]. The predominant ways of infection in areas of low endemicity play a role. Parenteral or percutaneous routes of HBV transmission, such as needle stick injury and mucus membrane splash in healthcare setting, as well as tattooing, piercing, sharing razors or toothbrushes, are also important in spreading the virus[33-35]. Surgery and dental care may be a source of infection; transfusion-related infections have currently become very rare in developed countries thanks to the improved serology and advances in molecular blood screening but can be an important source of infection in the poorest countries[36-45].

The prevalence of the infection in HCWs, a high risk group for acquiring infection with blood born pathogens due to occupational contact with infected body fluids, depends upon HBV prevalence in the general population. In India, an intermediate endemic zone where the estimated prevalence rate of HBV in the healthy general

population is around 4.7%, a recent study showed a 5% HBsAg positivity in HCWs, but a highest seropositivity of around 40% among laboratory technicians[23]. In Taiwan, among HCWs who were exposed to high risk patients, nearly 16% had HBV[24]. In north-west Turkey between 2002 and 2003, the occupational hazard of exposure to HBV was evaluated among 595 nurses. In total, 18.7% had been exposed to HBV infection and 2.7% were HBsAg positive. This result was in accordance with findings of several other studies, showing the level of prevalence for exposure to HBV among nurses to be between 16%-20%. In this study, 28% of nurses working in high risk departments were not vaccinated. Education plays a role in exposure to infection, with a decreasing trend from nurses that had received a normal high-school or equivalent education and those who had been educated to university standard[23].

Transfusion-related infections are an important source of HBV transmission, especially in the poorest countries. In countries with advanced medical, diagnostic and laboratory services, a large proportion of blood is used in sophisticated treatments requiring a high level of transfusion support, including chemotherapy, open heart surgery, organ transplantation and the management of hematological disorders such as leukemia, thalassemia and hemophilia. The pattern of blood usage is very different in countries where diagnostic and treatment options are more limited, with a much greater proportion of transfusions being given to women with obstetric emergencies and children suffering from severe anemia, often resulting from malaria and malnutrition. Data from WHO shows that, of the estimated 80 million units of blood donated annually worldwide, only 38% is collected in the developing world where 82% of the world's population live[44]. In 2007, 162 countries provided data to WHO on 85.4 million blood donations. The data comes from countries that account for a total of 5.9 billion people, representing 92% of the global population. About one fourth of the countries are not able to screen all blood donations for one or more of the transfusion-transmissible infections, including HIV, hepatitis B, hepatitis C and syphilis; only 48% of blood donations in developing countries are screened following basic quality assurance procedures; only 25% of the hospitals performing transfusions in developing countries and 33% of the hospitals in transitional countries have a transfusion committee to monitor transfusion practices, compared to 88% of the hospitals in developed countries[37].

In Sub-Saharan Africa, the risk of transfusion-transmitted infections is thought to be substantial because of the high prevalence of these infections, the frequent use of paid or replacement donors and incomplete screening coverage[41]. In most Latin American and Asian countries, blood and blood products are now regularly screened for HBsAg; for example, in Brazil where the screening of blood became mandatory in 1993, the prevalence of HBsAg decreased significantly from 0.36% in 1998 to 0.14% in 2005 due to the better control of blood donors and the decreasing infection rate in the general population[36].

In the majority of the Latin American countries where endemicity is intermediate/low, sexual intercourse is thought to be the most common route by which HBV infection is transmitted. In Brazil, a study from Victoria showed a HBV prevalence of 3.8% in HIV patients, while in other settings the prevalence rates ranged from 5.7% to 24.3%. While chronic HBV infection in the setting of HIV/AIDS is not considered an opportunistic infection, it is a common co-existing infection seen in HIV-infected individuals because of the shared modes of transmission[26].

Drug use is another important route of transmission of HBV. In Latin America, in low endemicity areas, injectable drug-related and sexual transmission of hepatitis viruses are a significant problem among young, HIV-infected and heterosexual individuals, even if the use of parenteral drugs is not common in these regions[27].

PREVENTION OF HEPATITIS B INFECTION

Prevention of HBV infection is a public health priority, especially for those groups at major risk of becoming chronic carriers.

Infection rate can be reduced through a modification of behavior and improving individual education. Testing of all blood donations and assuring asepsis in clinical practice reduce the risk of contracting HBV. Moreover, screening of all pregnant women helps to avoid mother to child transmission at birth. Administration of human hepatitis B immunoglobulin contributes to preventing neonatal infection and can be used after exposure to HBV as prophylaxis. Vaccination is the most effective means of preventing hepatitis B, cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma worldwide[46-51].

The first vaccines, available between 1981 and 1982, were produced by harvesting the hepatitis B surface antigen from plasma of chronic HBsAg carriers and contained highly purified 22 nm HBsAg particles inactivated through a combination of urea, pepsin, formaldehyde and heat. These immunogenic plasma-derived vaccines have been used with success in several hundred million individuals and are still produced in Asia and used in a number of countries. Concern about the safety of these vaccines regarding transmission of blood-borne pathogens has proved to be unfounded. In the mid 1980s, recombinant DNA hepatitis B vaccines containing HBsAg expressed in HBV transfected yeasts (i.e. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*), the so-called "second" generation hepatitis B vaccine, were commercialized. This new technology offered the potential of unlimited production, which allowed the hepatitis B vaccine to become one of the most widely used in the world. Several hundred million doses of hepatitis B vaccine have been administered worldwide with an excellent record of safety and efficacy. Similar results were obtained in India, where a new recombinant DNA HBV vaccine was produced[52,53].

Following a full course of vaccination (3 doses given at 0, 1 and 6 mo), seroprotection rates of antibodies against HBsAg (anti-HBs) are close to 100% in children

and almost 95% in healthy young adults. People who are elderly, obese, heavy smokers or immunocompromised, including those infected with HIV, may have suboptimal responses when vaccinated. Immunodeficient patients, such as those undergoing hemodialysis or immunosuppressant therapy, require higher doses of vaccine and more injections (i.e. at months 0, 1, 2 and 6) to achieve an adequate immune response. Rapid protection (i.e. for health care workers exposed to HBV or a susceptible sexual partner of an acute hepatitis B patient) can be achieved through the adoption of an accelerated schedule, including 3 doses of vaccine administered at 0, 1 and 2 mo, followed by a booster dose given at 12 mo. The site of injection and mode of administration are critical factors in achieving an optimal response. The vaccine should be given intramuscularly into the deltoid region in children (≥1 year of age) and adults or into the anterolateral thigh in newborns and infants (< 1 year of age). The intradermal route and buttock administration are not recommended. Hepatitis B vaccines are well tolerated. Side effects are generally mild, transient and confined to the site of injection (erythema, swelling, induration). Systemic reactions (fatigue, slight fever, headache, nausea, abdominal pain) are uncommon. However, in recent years, the safety of the hepatitis B vaccine has been questioned, but extensive studies concluded that there is no reason to change the current policies of vaccination. Hepatitis B vaccination is not contraindicated in pregnant or lactating women. The only absolute contraindications are known hypersensitivity to any component of the vaccine or a history of anaphylaxis to a previous dose.

Follow-up studies have shown that the vaccine-induced antibody persists over periods of at least 10-15 years and that the duration of anti-HBs is related to the antibody peak level achieved after primary vaccination. Follow-up of those vaccinated has shown that the antibody concentrations usually decline over time but clinically significant breakthrough infections are rare. Evidence indicates that successfully vaccinated individuals who have lost their antibodies over time usually show a rapid anamnestic response when boosted with an additional dose of vaccine or when exposed to the HBV. This means that the immunological memory for HBsAg can outlast the anti-HBs detection, providing long-term protection against acute disease and the development of an HBsAg carrier state. For immunocompromised patients, regular testing and booster administrations when anti-HBs antibody level falls below 10 mIU/mL are recommended instead.

Antibodies to the hepatitis B surface antigen are mainly targeted to bind the amino acid hydrophilic region, referred to as a determinant of HBsAg. This provides protection against infection with all HBV genotypes and is responsible for the broad immunity afforded by hepatitis B vaccination. The emergence of HBV S-gene mutants possibly able to escape the vaccine-induced response was suggested. However, at least at present, the overall impact of such mutants remains low and they do not pose a public health threat or a need to modify the established hepatitis B vaccination programs[1,2].

STRATEGIES FOR PREVENTION OF HEPATITIS B INFECTION SUITABLE FOR DEVELOPING COUNTRIES

In 1991, WHO recommended that all countries with a high hepatitis B disease burden should introduce the hepatitis B vaccine in their routine immunization programs by 1995 and all other countries by 1997. However, uptake of the vaccine was slow and the targets were not met. Even when the initial high price of the vaccine came down substantially, most low-income countries were unable to secure the funds needed to introduce the vaccine. Before the launch of GAVI (Global Alliance for Vaccines and Immunization) in 2000, less than 10% of the world's poorest countries were using hepatitis B vaccine in their routine immunization programs.

With support from GAVI through its financing arm, The Vaccine Fund, by December 2003, over 42 million children in low-income countries had been immunized with hepatitis B vaccine; as a result, over 500 000 premature deaths from hepatitis B have been prevented among children born in 2001-2003[54].

The most recent available data show global hepatitis B vaccine coverage at 69% with the following regional distribution: 67% in the African region; 76% in the European region; 81% in the Eastern Mediterranean region; 88% in the Americas; and 89% in the Western Pacific. Coverage in the South-East Asia region increased from 29% to 41% from 2007 to 2008. The immunization coverage with the 3rd dose of Hepatitis B vaccines in infants, in 2009, for country is: ≥ 90% (108 countries or 56%, most of them in low endemic areas); 80%-89% (31 countries or 16%); 50%-79% (31 countries or 16%); < 50% (7 countries or 4%); Hepatitis B not on schedule (16 countries or 8%)[55].

In 2005, the World Health Assembly approved and the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF) Executive Board endorsed the Global Immunization Vision and Strategy (GIVS). The primary objective of GIVS was to reduce vaccine-preventable disease mortality and morbidity by two-thirds by 2015 compared to 2000.

A mathematical model was developed to estimate the cost required to reach this goal in 117 low- and lower-middle-income countries and the study conclusions were that, in the 72 poorest countries, up to 40% of the overall resource needs were unmet[56].

WHO recommends that all countries introduce the hepatitis B vaccine into routine national infant immunization programs. Furthermore, in countries where a high proportion of infections with HBV are acquired perinatally (specifically in countries where the prevalence of chronic HBV infection in the general population is ≥ 8%), WHO recommends the first dose of hepatitis B vaccine be given as soon as possible after birth (< 24 h) to prevent perinatal HBV transmission.

In 2006, birth-dose coverage varied widely by region,

from 3% to 71%. Birth-dose coverage for states with ≥ 8% prevalence of chronic HBV infection was 36% (range by region, 1%-92%), and for countries with < 8% prevalence, it was 20%. Among the 81 states with immunization schedules that include a birth dose of hepatitis B vaccine, 22 (27%) did not report coverage data on the birth dose. It is likely that the reporting of the coverage of newborns with hepatitis B vaccine through the reporting form could be improved[57].

When introducing the hepatitis B vaccine into infant immunization programs, national policy-makers must decide when to begin the vaccine series: (1) at birth for all infants; (2) at birth but targeted only at newborns of HBV-infected women; or (3) at the same time in the immunization schedule as other vaccines are administered for all infants (for example, at 6 wk when other vaccines in the Expanded Program on Immunization are initiated), which is too late to prevent perinatal HBV infection. Administering a birth dose of hepatitis B vaccine only to newborns of HBV-infected women is usually not feasible in developing countries where the endemicity is high; this strategy is prone to error and misses post-exposure prophylaxis of infants, even in countries where testing and identifying infected women during pregnancy are well established. Additionally, it fails to provide early pre-exposure protection to babies born to uninfected women who may live with infected household contacts. Administering hepatitis B vaccine to infants within 24 h after birth is logistically challenging for several reasons. Firstly, many infants, especially in remote or poor areas, are born at home without the services of skilled attendants and therefore no trained providers are present to administer immunizations. Secondly, infant vaccines are usually given by specialized providers in well-baby clinics or other outpatient health settings, or during outreach immunization sessions in the community, but care of mothers during delivery and of infants immediately after birth is often provided by maternal health workers; so administering a birth dose of hepatitis B vaccine requires the coordination of these two types of workers. Thirdly, in many parts of the world, vaccines are delivered from central stores to peripheral clinics at monthly or at even longer intervals; these are primarily intended for use during periodic immunization sessions. Thus, the hepatitis B vaccine needed for the birth dose may not be available every day for administration to newborns.

Interventions that could improve birth-dose coverage include: increasing the number of infants born in facilities or attended by skilled health staff; improving coordination between immunization staff and maternal health staff; integrating delivery of the birth dose of hepatitis B vaccine into part of essential newborn care; improving the reach of the cold chain; exploring options for delivering the vaccine to infants born and residing in areas beyond the cold chain; and conducting health promotion and training to improve awareness among providers and parents of the importance of administering hepatitis B vaccine within 1 d after birth[2, 14-20].

Immunizing newborns with the hepatitis B vaccine should be the highest priority in highly endemic areas where the contribution of perinatal transmission to the overall disease burden is greatest. Nevertheless, even in countries with < 8% prevalence of chronic HBV infection, vaccinating newborns may be an important control strategy. Disease modeling suggests that the implementation of a birth dose of hepatitis B vaccine in WHO regions with a relatively low prevalence of chronic HBV infection, such as the Americas or Europe, will result in an additional 10%-20% reduction in HBV mortality in those regions compared with a hepatitis B vaccination schedule without a birth dose[57,58].

Post-exposure prophylaxis was thoroughly studied in infants born to HBeAg-positive HBsAg carrier mothers. The efficacy of protecting from chronic HBsAg carriage with passive-active immunoprophylaxis in these infants is more than 90%. In the case of hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) being skipped, active immunization is still effective, but the effectiveness of protecting from chronic HBV infection decreases slightly to more than 83%. The other means to increase the effectiveness of immunization against perinatal mother-to-infant HBV infection is to give HBIG to newborns of all HBsAg carrier mothers, as is done in the United States and in most European countries, but the costs rises considerably.

Although immunizing with universal vaccination is the only way to control HBV infection, recent advances in the specific treatment have enabled suppression of the chronic viral infection. Because humans are the only reservoir of the virus, if HBV could be eradicated or strongly and effectively suppressed in human carriers, the spread of HBV would be prevented.

Chronic hepatitis B can be treated by α-interferon (IFN- α; regular or pegylated) or nucleoside analogs. In properly chosen patients with chronic hepatitis B, 30%-40% will have a sustained virological response 6-12 mo after IFN-α treatment. More importantly, 30%-70% of the initial virological responders will clear serum HBsAg on follow up. The wide range of HBsAg clearance may be due to different durations of follow up, different treatment regimens, different distributions of HBV genotypes and different ethnic background of the patients. Seronegativity of HBsAg has very important implications: it signifies a better prognosis for patients and a much lower infectivity of the previous HBsAg carrier. The oral nucleoside analogs are effective and very well-tolerated. At present, these treatments are indicated for HBV carriers with disease activities; nevertheless, there may be exceptions: because high maternal viral load of HBV is the most critical factor in perinatal HBV transmission, even after on-schedule immunoprophylaxis, lowering the maternal viral load by antiviral therapy may reduce the perinatal HBV infection[59].

CONCLUSION

In spite of the decrease of the burden related to HBV

infection due to the adoption of mass immunization campaigns all over the world, the number of people still currently infected, especially in developing countries, will represent a public health concern in the foreseeable future. Improving prevention policy worldwide is mandatory in order to reduce the global burden of the disease.

A substantial number of WHO member states in areas with low or intermediate hepatitis B endemicity have implemented vaccination of newborns with the hepatitis B vaccine. Consideration should be given to implementing routine vaccination of newborns against HBV infection globally to prevent mortality and morbidity due to infection acquired perinatally.

Unfortunately, screening of all pregnant women and the use of human hepatitis B immunoglobulin as passive immunization is not affordable for many developing countries, so child vaccination remains the only means to prevent HBV spreading.

With its relatively modest costs and high benefits, HBV immunization continues to be one of the best values for public health investment today.

Moreover, enforced testing for HBsAg of blood donations in those countries where it is not a universal requirement yet could be an important measure to prevent infections in clinical settings, as well as maintaining asepsis in invasive techniques and vaccination for high risk groups.

A future challenge is to overcome the social and economic hurdles to maintain and improve prevention policy worldwide to reduce the global burden of the disease.

REFERENCES

1 **WHO**. Department of Communicable Diseases Surveillance and Response. Hepatitis B. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/csr/disease/hepatitis/HepatitisB_whocdscsrlyo2002_2.pdf

2 **Zanetti AR,** Van Damme P, Shouval D. The global impact of vaccination against hepatitis B: a historical overview. *Vaccine* 2008; **26**: 6266-6273

3 Global Immunization Data, October 2009. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/immunization_monitoring/data/en/

4 **WHO**. Expanded Programme on Immunization Hepatitis B Vaccine. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/vaccines-documents/DoxNews/updates/updat31e.pdf

5 **Viviani S,** Carrieri P, Bah E, Hall AJ, Kirk GD, Mendy M, Montesano R, Plymoth A, Sam O, Van der Sande M, Whittle H, Hainaut P, Gambia Hepatitis Intervention Study. 20 years into the Gambia Hepatitis Intervention Study: assessment of initial hypotheses and prospects for evaluation of protective effectiveness against liver cancer. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2008; **17**: 3216-3223

6 **Anwar WA**, Khaled HM, Amra HA, El-Nezami H, Loffredo CA. **Changing pattern of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)** and its risk factors in Egypt: possibilities for prevention. *Mutat Res* 2008; **659**: 176-184

7 **Rikabi A**, Bener A, Al-Marri A, Al-Thani S. Hepatitis B and C viral infections in chronic liver disease: a population based study in Qatar. *East Mediterr Health J* 2009; **15**: 778-784

8 **Fassio E**, Míguez C, Soria S, Palazzo F, Gadano A, Adrover R, Landeira G, Fernández N, García D, Barbero R, Perelstein G, Ríos B, Isla R, Civetta E, Pérez Ravier R, Barzola S, Curciarello J, Colombato LA, Jmeniltzky A. Etiology of hepatocellular carcinoma in Argentina: results of a multicenter retrospective study. *Acta Gastroenterol Latinoam* 2009; **39**: 47-52

9 **Mendy ME,** Welzel T, Lesi OA, Hainaut P, Hall AJ, Kuniholm MH, McConkey S, Goedert JJ, Kaye S, Rowland-Jones S, Whittle H, Kirk GD. Hepatitis B viral load and risk for liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma in The Gambia, West Africa. *J Viral Hepat* 2010; **17**:115-122

10 **Nordenstedt H**, White DL, El-Serag HB. The changing pattern of epidemiology in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Dig Liver Dis* 2010; **42** Suppl 3: S206-S214

11 **McClune AC**, Tong MJ. Chronic hepatitis B and hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Liver Dis* 2010; **14**: 461-476

12 **Asia-Pacific Working Party on Prevention of Hepatocellular Carcinoma**. Prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma in the Asia-Pacific region: consensus statements. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25**: 657-663

13 **Kew MC**. Epidemiology of chronic hepatitis B virus infection, hepatocellular carcinoma, and hepatitis B virus-induced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Pathol Biol (Paris)* 2010; **58**: 273-277

14 **Elsheikh RM**, Daak AA, Elsheikh MA, Karsany MS, Adam I. Hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus in pregnant Sudanese women. *Virol J* 2007; **4**: 104

15 **Candotti D**, Danso K, Allain JP. **Maternofetal transmission** of hepatitis B virus genotype E in Ghana, west Africa. *J Gen Virol* 2007; **88**: 2686-2695

16 **Lima LH**, Viana MC. Prevalence and risk factors for HIV, syphilis, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, and HTLV-I/II infection in low-income postpartum and pregnant women in Greater Metropolitan Vitória, Espírito Santo State, Brazil. *Cad Saude Publica* 2009; **25**: 668-676

17 **Chae HB**, Kim JH, Kim JK, Yim HJ. Current status of liver diseases in Korea: hepatitis B. *Korean J Hepatol* 2009; **15** Suppl 6: S13-S24

18 **Shrestha P**, Bhandari D, Sharma D, Bhandari BP. **A study of** viral hepatitis during pregnancy in Nepal Medical College Teaching Hospital. *Nepal Med Coll J* 2009; **11**: 192-194

19 **El-Magrahe H**, Furarah AR, El-Figih K, El-Urshfany S, Ghenghesh KS. Maternal and neonatal seroprevalence of Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) in Tripoli, Libya. *J Infect Dev Ctries* 2010; **4**: 168-170

20 **Zhang S**, Li RT, Wang Y, Liu Q, Zhou YH, Hu Y. Seroprevalence of hepatitis B surface antigen among pregnant women in Jiangsu, China, 17 years after introduction of hepatitis B vaccine. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 2010; **109**: 194-197

21 **Ganju SA**, Goel A. Prevalence of HBV and HCV infection among health care workers (HCWs). *J Commun Dis* 2000; **32**: 228-230

22 **Shiao J**, Guo L, McLaws ML. Estimation of the risk of bloodborne pathogens to health care workers after a needlestick injury in Taiwan. *Am J Infect Control* 2002; **30**: 15-20

23 **Kosgeroglu N**, Ayranci U, Vardareli E, Dincer S. Occupational exposure to hepatitis infection among Turkish nurses: frequency of needle exposure, sharps injuries and vaccination. *Epidemiol Infect* 2004; **132**: 27-33

24 **Pereira LM**, Martelli CM, Merchán-Hamann E, Montarroyos UR, Braga MC, de Lima ML, Cardoso MR, Turchi MD, Costa MA, de Alencar LC, Moreira RC, Figueiredo GM, Ximenes RA. **Population-based multicentric survey of hepatitis B** infection and risk factor differences among three regions in Brazil. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2009; **81**: 240-247

25 **Ziraba AK**, Bwogi J, Namale A, Wainaina CW, Mayanja-Kizza H. Sero-prevalence and risk factors for hepatitis B virus infection among health care workers in a tertiary hospital in Uganda. *BMC Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 191

26 **Zago AM**, Machado TF, Cazarim FL, Miranda AE. Prevalence and risk factors for chronic hepatitis B in HIV patients attended at a sexually-transmitted disease clinic in Vitória, Brazil. *Braz J Infect Dis* 2007; **11**: 475-478

27 **Tanaka J**. Hepatitis B epidemiology in Latin America. *Vaccine* 2000; **18** Suppl 1: S17-S19

28 **Nunes CL**, Andrade T, Galvão-Castro B, Bastos FI, Reingold A. Assessing risk behaviors and prevalence of sexually transmitted and blood-borne infections among female crack cocaine users inSalvador--Bahia, Brazil. *Braz J Infect Dis* 2007; **11**: 561-566

29 **Nyirenda M**, Beadsworth MB, Stephany P, Hart CA, Hart IJ, Munthali C, Beeching NJ, Zijlstra EE. Prevalence of infection with hepatitis B and C virus and coinfection with HIV in medical inpatients in Malawi. *J Infect* 2008; **57**: 72-77

30 **Pérez CC**, Cerón AI, Fuentes LG, Zañartu SC, Balcells M ME, Ajenjo HC, Rabagliati BR, Labarca LJ, Acuña LG. [Hepatitis B, C, Treponema pallidum and Toxoplasma gondii coinfections in HIV infected patients]. *Rev Med Chil* 2009; **137**: 641-648

31 **Ferreira RC**, Rodrigues FP, Teles SA, Lopes CL, Motta-Castro AR, Novais AC, Souto FJ, Martins RM. Prevalence of hepatitis B virus and risk factors in Brazilian non-injecting drug users. *J Med Virol* 2009; **81**: 602-609

32 **Lama JR**, Agurto HS, Guanira JV, Ganoza C, Casapia M, Ojeda N, Ortiz A, Zamalloa V, Suarez-Ognio L, Cabezas C, Sanchez JL, Sanchez J. Hepatitis B infection and association with other sexually transmitted infections among men who have sex with men in Peru. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2010; **83**: 194-200

33 **Ashraf H**, Alam NH, Rothermundt C, Brooks A, Bardhan P, Hossain L, Salam MA, Hassan MS, Beglinger C, Gyr N. Prevalence and risk factors of hepatitis B and C virus infections in an impoverished urban community in Dhaka, Bangladesh. *BMC Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 208

34 **Lin CF**, Twu SJ, Chen PH, Cheng JS, Wang JD. Prevalence and determinants of hepatitis B antigenemia in 15,007 inmates in Taiwan. *J Epidemiol* 2010; **20**: 231-236

35 **Mahfoud Z**, Kassak K, Kreidieh K, Shamra S, Ramia S. Prevalence of antibodies to human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis B and hepatitis C and risk factors in prisoners in Lebanon. *J Infect Dev Ctries* 2010; **4**: 144-149

36 **Andrade AF**, Oliveira-Silva M, Silva SG, Motta IJ, Bonvicino CR. **Seroprevalence of hepatitis B and C virus markers** among blood donors in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, 1998-2005. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2006; **101**: 673-676

37 **WHO**. Global Blood Safety and Availability - Key facts and figures from the 2007 Blood Safety survey. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs279/en/print.html

38 **Nascimento MC**, Mayaud P, Sabino EC, Torres KL, Franceschi S. Prevalence of hepatitis B and C serological markers among first-time blood donors in Brazil: a multi-center serosurvey. *J Med Virol* 2008; **80**: 53-57

39 **Abou MA**, Eltahir YM, Ali AS. Seroprevalence of hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus among blood donors in Nyala, South Dar Fur, Sudan. *Virol J* 2009; **6**: 146

40 **Tessema B**, Yismaw G, Kassu A, Amsalu A, Mulu A, Emmrich F, Sack U. Seroprevalence of HIV, HBV, HCV and syphilis infections among blood donors at Gondar University Teaching Hospital, Northwest Ethiopia: declining trends over a period of five years. *BMC Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 111

41 **Jayaraman S**, Chalabi Z, Perel P, Guerriero C, Roberts I. The risk of transfusion-transmitted infections in sub-Saharan Africa. *Transfusion* 2010; **50**: 433-442

42 **Yuen MF**, Lee CK, Wong DK, Fung J, Hung I, Hsu A, But DY, Cheung TK, Chan P, Yuen JC, Fung FK, Seto WK, Lin CK, Lai CL. Prevalence of occult hepatitis B infection in a highly endemic area for chronic hepatitis B: a study of a large blood donor population. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 1389-1393

43 **Acar A**, Kemahli S, Altunay H, Kosan E, Oncul O, Gorenek L, Cavuslu S. HBV, HCV and HIV seroprevalence among blood donors in Istanbul, Turkey: how effective are the changes in the national blood transfusion policies? *Braz J Infect Dis* 2010; **14**: 41-46

44 **WHO**. Blood Transfusion Safety Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/bloodsafety/en/Blood_Transfusion_Safety.pdf

45 **Tiwari BR**, Ghimire P, Kandel SR, Rajkarnikar M. Seroprevalence of HBV and HCV in blood donors: A study from regional blood transfusion services of Nepal. *Asian J Transfus Sci* 2010; **4**: 91-93

46 **Rani M**, Yang B, Nesbit R. Hepatitis B control by 2012 in the WHO Western Pacific Region: rationale and implications. *Bull World Health Organ* 2009; **87**: 707-713

47 **Mandeville KL**, Krabshuis J, Ladep NG, Mulder CJ, Quigley EM, Khan SA. Gastroenterology in developing countries: issues and advances. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 2839-2854

48 **Lu J**, Zhou Y, Lin X, Jiang Y, Tian R, Zhang Y, Wu J, Zhang F, Zhang Y, Wang Y, Bi S. General epidemiological parameters of viral hepatitis A, B, C, and E in six regions of China: a cross-sectional study in 2007. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e8467

49 **Voigt AR**, Strazer Neto M, Spada C, Treitinger A. Seroprevalence of hepatitis B and hepatitis C markers among children and adolescents in the south Brazilian region: metropolitan area of Florianópolis, Santa Catarina. *Braz J Infect Dis* 2010; **14**: 60-65

50 **Park NH**, Chung YH, Lee HS. Impacts of vaccination on hepatitis B viral infections in Korea over a 25-year period. *Intervirology* 2010; **53**: 20-28

51 **Alavian SM**, Fallahian F, Lankarani KB. **Implementing strategies** for hepatitis B vaccination. *Saudi J Kidney Dis Transpl* 2010; **21**: 10-22

52 **Abraham P**, Mistry FP, Bapat MR, Sharma G, Reddy GR, Prasad KS, Ramanna V. Evaluation of a new recombinant DNA hepatitis B vaccine (Shanvac-B). *Vaccine* 1999; **17**: 1125-1129

53 **Thakur V**, Pati NT, Gupta RC, Sarin SK. Efficacy of Shanvac-B recombinant DNA hepatitis B vaccine in health care workers of Northern India. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2010; **9**: 393-397

54 GAVI hepatitis B fact sheet 2005. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/immunization_delivery/adc/gavi_hepb_factsheet.pdf

55 Global Immunization Data, October 2009. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/immunization_monitoring/data/data_regions/en/index.html

56 **Wolfson LJ**, Gasse F, Lee-Martin SP, Lydon P, Magan A, Tibouti A, Johns A, Hutubessy R, Salamab P and Okwo-Beled JM. Estimating the costs of achieving the WHO-UNICEF Global Immunization Vision and Strategy, 2006-2015. *Bull World Health Organ* 2008; **86**: 27-39

57 **Goldstein ST**, Zhou F, Hadler SC, Bell BP, Mast EE and Margolis HS. A mathematical model to estimate global hepatitis B disease burden and vaccination impact. *Int J Epidemiol* 2005; **34**: 1329-1339

58 Worldwide implementation of hepatitis B vaccination of newborns, 2006. *Weekly epidemiological record* 2008; **83**: 429-440. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/wer

59 **Chen DS**. Toward elimination and eradication of hepatitis B. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25**: 19-25

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Wu X

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.81

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): 81-90
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Francesca Cainelli, MD, *Series Editor*

Alcoholic liver disease

Radan Bruha, Karel Dvorak, Jaromir Petrtyl

Radan Bruha, 4th Department of Internal Medicine, General Teaching Hospital, First Faculty of Medicine, Charles University, 12808 Prague, Czech Republic
Karel Dvorak, Jaromir Petrtyl, 4th Department of Internal Medicine, General Teaching Hospital, First Faculty of Medicine, Charles University, 12808 Prague, Czech Republic
Author contributions: Bruha R contributed to this work as the main author; Dvorak K and Petrtyl J wrote the revisited chapters "Treatment" and "Introduction (Epidemiology)".
Supported by Grant IGA MZCR NT 11 247 (The role of protective mechanisms, oxidative stress and inflammatory reaction in the progression of liver damage in patient with metabolic syndrome and possible influence of antioxidative factors on the prevention of liver damage in experimental model of NASH); UK SVV 3362 (Regulatory parameters in the pathogenesis of inflammatory and oncologic diseases)
Correspondence to: Radan Bruha, MD, PhD, 4th Department of Internal Medicine, General Teaching Hospital, First Faculty of Medicine, Charles University, U Nemocnice 2 st, 12808 Prague, Czech Republic. bruha@cesnet.cz
Telephone: +420-224-962506 Fax: +420-224-923524
Received: February 28, 2011 Revised: September 7, 2011
Accepted: March 17, 2012
Published online: March 27, 2012

Abstract

Alcohol use disorders affect millions of individuals worldwide. Alcohol consumption is directly associated with liver disease mortality and accounts for elevated social and economic costs. Alcoholic liver disease (ALD) may take the form of acute involvement (alcoholic hepatitis) or chronic liver disease (steatosis, steatohepatitis, fibrosis and cirrhosis). The severity and prognosis of alcohol-induced liver disease depends on the amount, pattern and duration of alcohol consumption, as well as on the presence of liver inflammation, diet, nutritional status and genetic predisposition of an individual. While steatosis is an almost completely benign disease, liver cirrhosis is associated with marked morbidity, mortality and life expectancy shortening. The median survival of patients with advanced cirrhosis is 1-2 years. Severe acute alcoholic hepatitis (AH) is associated with mortality as high as 50%. It has been managed with corticoids, pentoxifylline and enteral nutrition, although evidence based data are still conflicting. Some author suggest that pentoxifylline could be a better first-line treatment in patients with severe AH. Absolute abstinence is a basic condition for any treatment of acute or chronic ALD, the other therapeutical procedure being of a supportive nature and questionable significance. Acamprosate appears to be an effective treatment strategy for supporting continuous abstinence in alcohol dependent patients. Patients with advanced liver cirrhosis who demonstrably abstain can be considered for liver transplantation, which leads to a markedly prolonged life expectancy. The crucial step in ALD prevention is in the prevention of alcohol abuse, whereas the prevention of liver injury in active alcohol abusers is not clinically applicable.

Key words: Alcohol; Alcoholic liver disease; Liver cirrhosis; Liver fibrosis; Steatohepatitis; Steatosis

Peer reviewers: Dr. Henning Gronbaek, cal Department V, Aarhus University Hospital, Norrebrogade 44, Aarhus 8000, Denmark; Dr. Hongzhi Xu, Massachusetts General Hospital, 51 Blossom Street, Room 435, Boston, MA 02148, United States

Bruha R, Dvorak K, Petrtyl J. Alcoholic liver disease. *World J Hepatol* 2012; 4(3): 81-90 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v4/i3/81.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.81

INTRODUCTION

Alcohol is a most frequent cause of liver disease in western countries[1]. Mortality due to liver cirrhosis in those countries is in direct proportion to absolute alcohol consumption per capita-the highest in France and Spain (over

30 deaths per a population of 100 000 per year), the lowest in the northern European countries (up to 5 deaths per 100 000 inhabitants per year). In Central Europe, the figure is 15 deaths due to cirrhosis per 100 000. The highest mortality is in men aged 35-64 years, lower in women (Figure 1)[2]. The past two to three decades have seen a stabilization if not a drop in the intake of alcohol in western countries, while a very adverse trend is reported from Eastern Europe and developing countries[3].

In what is an alarming development, alcohol abuse also afflicts societies and nations without any "drinking tradition", such as in Asia. For example, in a cross-sectional study of two rural communities in China (in which almost 10 000 inhabitants were interviewed for current and lifetime alcohol use)[4], the age-standardized prevalence of lifetime alcohol dependence ranged from 4.8% to 11.8% in different regions. Unlike most western reports, alcohol dependence shows a higher prevalence than the abuse itself.

Coincidence with HIV infection is another attribute of alcohol abuse. This was described in India for example, where the recent increase in alcohol consumption in many sectors of the general population is coupled with strong evidence of the role of alcohol in the spread of HIV infection and other health risks[5]. An even more critical situation appears to have developed in Africa. Pithey *et al*[6] performed a systematic review of sub-Saharan African studies concerning the association between alcohol abuse and HIV infection. Their findings strongly support an association between the two factors. A Fisher *et al*[7] study of high-risk African women showed, even after adjustment for demographic and employment variables, that drinkers were more likely to be HIV positive than non-drinkers (relative risk 2.1). Problem drinkers were also more likely to have engaged in several types of high-risk sexual behavior and to have other sexually transmitted infections, including HSV-2.

Many studies have shown that the amount of undiluted ("pure") alcohol consumed and the duration of that consumption are closely related to cirrhosis. According to some reports, cirrhosis does not develop below a lifetime alcohol consumption of 100 kg of undiluted alcohol[8]. This amount corresponds to an average daily intake of 30 grams of undiluted alcohol for 10 years. Heavy alcoholics consuming at least 80 g of alcohol per day for more than 10 years will develop liver disease at a rate of nearly 100%. A detailed study of 256 heavy drinkers admitted to hospital not because of liver complaints, found steatosis at a rate of 45%, steatohepatitis at 34%, steatohepatitis with cirrhosis at 10% and cirrhosis alone at 10% in their liver biopsies[9]. Formerly, 40-60 g of undiluted alcohol (i.e., 2-3 beers) per day used to be reported as a safe limit for men, less (20 g/d) for women. Data from the "Dionysos" study show, however, that consumption of more than 30 g of pure alcohol daily, regardless of sex, already increases the risk of liver disease[10].

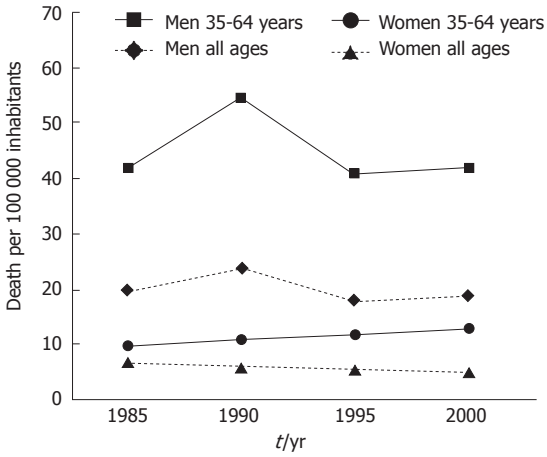


Figure 1 Mortality from cirrhosis in Czech Republic[2].

For practical purposes, alcohol intake is rated by the count of "drinks". The National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism defines a standard drink as 11-14 g of alcohol, which corresponds to approximately one drink of 40% spirit, one glass of wine or one 0.33 l (12-oz) beer. Hence, a "safe" daily intake of alcohol should not be more than two "drinks". On the contrary, moderate ethanol consumption (mainly wine) may mean a reduced cardiovascular risk[11], especially in women[12].

Much the same applies to Asians. For example, in the Chinese population, the ethanol risk threshold for developing alcoholic liver disease (ALD) is 20 g per day with the risk increasing in proportion to the daily intake[13]. Those drinking 20 g of ethanol per day and for less than 5 years are safe from ALD. In this study of 1270 alcohol drinkers, obesity also increases the risk. Abstinence and weight reduction will directly improve the prognosis of ALD.

As for liver injury, it has been postulated for many years that the type of alcoholic beverage makes little, if any difference. Nevertheless, some authors have proposed that mortality from cirrhosis is associated with the consumption of spirits more strongly than with other alcoholic beverages[14]. It is not clear whether this effect can be put down to the drinkers' socio-behavioral characteristics or to increased toxicity of alcoholic beverages[15].

ALD may take the form of acute involvement (alcoholic hepatitis) or chronic liver disease (steatosis, steatohepatitis, fibrosis and cirrhosis). Their progression also depends on the pattern of alcohol intake-drinking alcohol at mealtimes results in a lower risk of liver disease than consumption at other times; fitful, intermittent drinking is more sparing for the liver than a continuous supply of alcohol[16].

Although ALD is a disease that displays an absolute requirement for a voluntary environmental exposure (the consumption of alcohol), many other factors, including genetic host system attributes, are involved in the ALD evolution and progression.

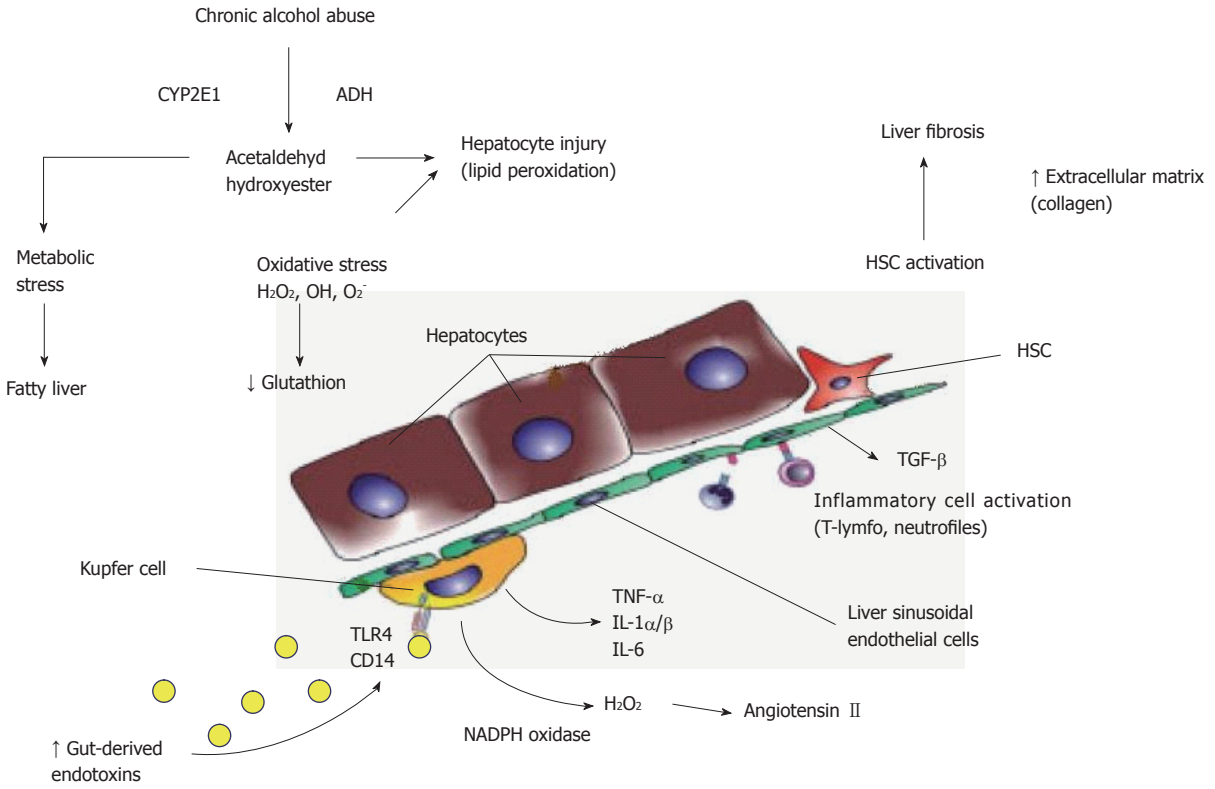


Figure 2 Pathogenesis of inflammatory changes in alcoholic liver disease[56]. ADH: Alcohol dehydrogenase; HSC: Hepatic stellate cell.

ETIOLOGY, PATHOGENESIS, NATURAL COURSE AND PROGNOSIS OF ALCOHOLIC LIVER DISEASE

The liver is the main organ of alcohol metabolism. Alcohol is metabolized in the liver in three ways: (1) by the enzyme alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH); (2) by cytochrome P-4502E1 (CYP2E1); and (3) by mitochondrial catalase. Only the first two pathways are of practical significance-ADH finds use in the degradation of limited quantities of alcohol, while alcohol-induced CYP2E1 takes place in excessive alcohol intake. Apart from the liver, ADH is also present in the gastric mucosa and the assumption is that individuals with low gastric ADH activity are more susceptible to alcoholic liver disease. This may also help to explain why women who have decreased gastric ADH activity[17] are more susceptible to developing alcoholic liver disease.

Both enzymes convert alcohol to acetaldehyde, which is in part responsible for the liver injury too. However, the process of liver injury is much more complex (Figure 2)-resulting from biochemical, genetic, cellular, immunological and humoral disorders in connection with the intake and metabolism of excessive quantities of alcohol. A major role is played there by oxidative stress (which is mainly due to alcohol-induced CYP2E1), by simultaneous shortage of antioxidants in the hepatocytes and, last but not least, by acetaldehyde alone and altered balance of many cytokines-mainly tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α[18]. Changes in lipid metabolism and in adipose tissue also enhance the process of liver injury[19]. All above mentioned changes result in the injury of cell membranes and organelles (especially mitochondria). The mechanisms of hepatocytic damage due to excessive intake of alcohol show some similarity to changes seen in non-alcoholic steatohepatitis, except that the primary insult is different[20].

Individual susceptibility is another factor to take into account; moreover, any other liver involvement such as viral hepatitis[21] or metabolic disease adds to the risks of alcoholism, as does obesity and metabolic syndrome[22].

In fact, alcoholics were clearly shown to have an increased prevalence of HCV when compared with non-alcoholics and this combination synergistically accelerates liver injury[23]. As for alcohol influence on the liver, the caloric intake should also be taken in account. Increased caloric intake leads to excessive fat deposition and obesity in some patients and can aggravate the liver injury[24].

Of late, there has been an influx of information on correlations between genetic polymorphisms of alcohol-metabolizing enzymes and alcoholic liver disease[25]. The genetics of ALD development involves an inherited predisposition to alcohol dependence, as well as the resulting development of liver injury[26]. Family studies have established an important role of genetics in alcohol dependence. To date, only two genes, which are involved in alcohol metabolism, have shown significant involvement. The alcohol dehydrogenase ADH1B*1 allele was found to be associated with an approximately threefold increase in alcohol dependence and the aldehyde dehy-

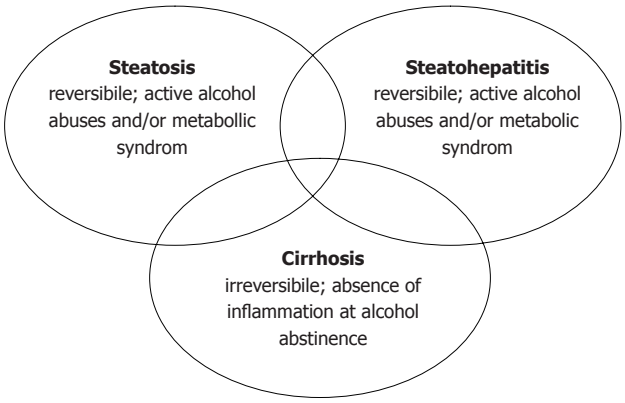


Figure 3 Spectrum of alcoholic liver disease.

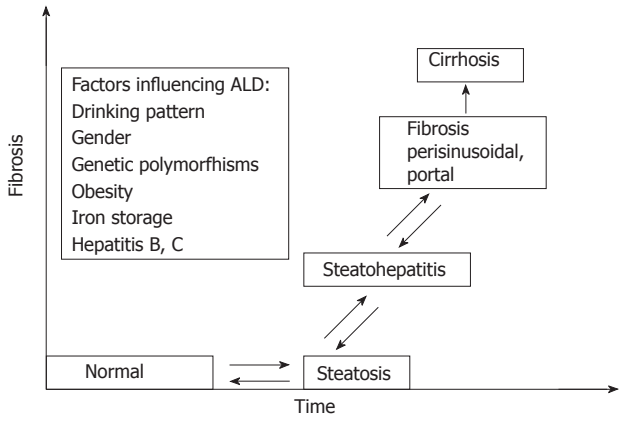


Figure 4 Dynamic process of alcoholic liver disease. ALD: alcoholic liver disease.

drogenase ALDH2*2 allele was found to be instrumental in a 10-fold reduction of the alcohol dependence risk[27]. This association was described in Asian populations[28]. Also reported have been links between alcohol dependence and certain genetic polymorphisms of genes for the GABA receptor or some other neuropeptides[29].

Although most heavy drinkers do develop fatty liver, only a minority progress to liver cirrhosis, suggesting that some other genetic or environmental factors are important for the disease progression. Evidence of genetic involvement in the progression of alcoholic fatty liver to advanced ALD comes from a twin study. The rate of alcoholic cirrhosis was described to be significantly higher in monozygotic twins than in dizygotic twins (16.9% *vs* 5.3%, respectively)[30]. A study of genes involved in alcohol metabolism (e.g., alcohol and aldehyde dehydrogenase and cytochrome P450 2E1) and genes associated with inflammation (e.g., TNF-α and interleukin-10) proved to be inconclusive, with several allelic associations detected but not verified in follow-up studies[31]. The Asian population's hypersensitivity to alcohol could be put down to polymorphisms of genes for the enzymes ADH and CYP2E1. Perhaps the most compelling genetic finding for advanced ALD risk involves the immune regulatory cytotoxic T lymphocyte antigen-4 gene, in which homozygosity for the A49G polymorphism was found to confer a significant risk of alcoholic cirrhosis (odds ratio 3.5) in Italians[32]. However, this finding has yet to be confirmed in follow-up studies.

Polymorphisms for TNF-α co-responsible for an increased risk of liver disease have been discovered in a similar way[33]. For the time being, though, we do not know how to make use of this new knowledge in routine practice.

Malnutrition is another clinical situation with an impact on the evolution of ALD. Heavy alcohol drinkers often lack proper diets or consume diets which are compromised in various nutrients, such as proteins, polyunsaturated fatty acids and vitamins[34].

Liver steatosis is the most frequent primary change in chronic alcohol abuse. Changes associated with alcohol metabolism may subsequently trigger an inflammatory reaction, resulting in alcoholic hepatitis or chronic liver disease (Figure 3).

Liver disease in alcohol abusers is more likely to take the form of chronic changes (steato-hepatitis and fibrosis), leading to cirrhosis later in life. The spectrum of histological findings can be described as a dynamic process[35] (Figure 4). Simple steatosis is reversible after a number of weeks of abstinence; steatohepatitis, a condition seen in only some alcoholics, is a fibrogenic process which can induce changes leading to cirrhosis. Steatohepatitis is also reversible, although a certain degree of fibrosis may persist. The reversibility of steatohepatitis or even fibrosis in humans is well documented by trials on the treatment of chronic hepatitis C[36] and experimentally on NASH models[37]. Steatohepatitis, in particular, often coincides with liver cirrhosis in active alcoholics and is a frequent cause of decompensation of cirrhosis[38].

Simple steatosis is regarded as a benign condition; nevertheless, given continued abuse, it too, can induce fibrogenesis[39]; in any case, up to 20% of the patients with simple steatosis are likely to develop fibrosis or cirrhosis within a period of ten years[40]. The prognosis of a patient with cirrhosis depends mainly on the presence of complications because of portal hypertension and continued abuse of alcohol. Abstainers with decompensated cirrhosis have a five year survival at a rate of 60% against the 30% survival rate in those who continue in the abuse[41].

Severe alcoholic hepatitis, although relatively rare, has a death rate of up to 50%. Identifying individuals with a high mortality risk is crucial in the management of acute alcoholic hepatitis. Multiple prognostic factors were studied over the last decade, including Child-Pugh classification (CTP), Maddrey score (bilirubin mg/dL + 4.6 × prothrombin time)[42] and others. The MELD score was found a more valuable model than CTP or the Maddrey score in the detection of high risk patients admitted with alcoholic hepatitis[43]. Alternatively, the more recent Glasgow alcoholic hepatitis score could be used[44]. A Glasgow score exceeding 9 points is associated with poor prognosis (Table 1).

Table 1 Glasgow alcoholic hepatitis score[44]

Parameter/score	1	2	3
Age (yr)	< 50	⩾ 50	-
Leucocytes (10^9/L)	< 15	⩾ 15	-
Urea (mmol/L)	< 5	⩾ 5	-
INR	< 1.5	1.5-2	> 2
Bilirubin (μmol/L)	< 125	125-250	> 250

The score is to be added to each parameter, the sum total being between 5 and 12 points. The value of 9 and higher implies poor prognosis in alcoholic hepatitis. **INR: International normalised ratio.**

CLINICAL MANIFESTATION AND LABORATORY FINDINGS

Patients with steatosis are usually symptom-free; they may have slightly elevated liver function tests and enlarged liver (both are often discovered accidentally during examination for other reasons).

In the stage of acute alcoholic hepatitis, there may be nausea, loss of appetite, gradual loss of weight, icterus and other symptoms of liver dysfunction (prolonged prothrombin time, hypoalbuminemia, ascites, and hepatic encephalopathy). Patients with alcoholic hepatitis usually show increased liver test results, including gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT), hypergammaglobulinemia and enlarged liver.

Sonography is the basic imaging technique for liver examination. Liver biopsy, while not always necessary, can help to differentiate simple steatosis from steatohepatitis, fibrosis or incipient cirrhosis. Precise definition of the liver fibrosis stage is essential for management and prognosis in clinical practice. Recently, blood markers and instrumental methods have been proposed for non-invasive assessment of liver fibrosis[45]. However, there are still some doubts as to their implementation in clinical use. Non-invasive examination with transient elastography takes advantage of the fibrotic liver tissue ability to change the velocity of ultrasound propagation. The results of this method correlate well with the bioptically proved degree of fibrosis[46]. Similar results could be obtained from a combination of biochemical and clinical parameters of fibrosis. As for the clinical picture, the state of alcoholic liver cirrhosis shows no difference from cirrhosis of other etiology[38].

ASSESSMENT OF ACTIVE ALCOHOL ABUSE

Assessment of continued alcohol abuse in patients with alcoholic liver disease is essential for their treatment as well as prognosis. Those with alcoholic cirrhosis also make up a significant part of patients indicated for liver transplantation (30%-50%), bearing in mind that abstinence is an essential condition for considering this treatment. Continued alcohol abuse is evaluated on the basis of clinical history, psychological examination and laboratory testing. Thorough clinical and psychological examination is the crucial condition for alcohol abuse diagnosis. Regarding the clinical history, the diagnosis of alcohol abuse and dependence was substantially improved by implementation of simple methods such as a single question inquiring how often the maximum daily alcohol limit has been exceeded[47]. Other clinical screening tools such as the need to cut down, annoyed by criticism, guilty about drinking need for an eye-opener in the morning (CAGE), and the alcohol use disorders identification test (AUDIT-C) are also very easy to apply[48]. With the CAGE questionnaire, two positive answers indicate alcohol dependence with a sensitivity of more than 70% and specificity of more than 90%. The AUDIT-C screening thresholds for the detection of alcohol abuse are ⩾ 4 points for men (sensitivity 86%, specificity 89%) and ⩾ 3 points for women (sensitivity 73%, specificity 91%).

As for laboratory tests, continued abuse can be read from higher GGT values, increased AST/ALT ratio or an increased volume of red blood cells (MCV). In advanced liver cirrhosis, however, the values of hepatic enzymes fall short of sufficient sensitivity or specificity levels. More information about the actual abuse of alcohol can be derived from the percentage of carboxy-deficient transferrin estimation (%CDT) in serum or ethyl glucuronide in urine or hair[49]. A CDT value greater than 2.8% has a 79% sensitivity and 92% specificity for active alcohol abuse detection in patients with advanced cirrhosis[50].

PREVENTION OF ALD

Prevention of or treatment for alcohol abuse are crucial steps in the prevention of ALD[51]. Alcohol dependence is a chronic relapsing medical disorder which is treatable when efficacious medicines are added to enhance the effects of psychosocial treatment. Medication with, e.g., naltrexone and acamprosate showed mixed results in previous clinical trials[52]. Rősner *et al*[53] recently performed a meta-analysis to determine the efficacy and tolerability of acamprosate in comparison with placebo and other pharmacological agents. Almost 7000 patients in 24 double-blind randomised controlled trials were evaluated. Compared to placebo, acamprosate was shown to significantly reduce the risk of any drinking (RR 0.86) and to significantly increase the cumulative abstinence duration. The only side effect that was more frequently reported under acamprosate than with placebo was diarrhea. The authors of this Cochrane review conclude that acamprosate appears to be an effective and safe treatment strategy for supporting continuous abstinence after detoxification in alcohol dependent patients. Indeed, without a pharmacological adjunct to psychosocial therapy, the clinical outcome is poor, with up to 70% of patients resuming drinking within one year[54].

The prevention of liver injury in active alcohol abusers is not clinically applicable. For example, in an experiment, the addition to the diet of polyunsaturated fatty acids prevented alcohol-induced fatty liver and mitochon-

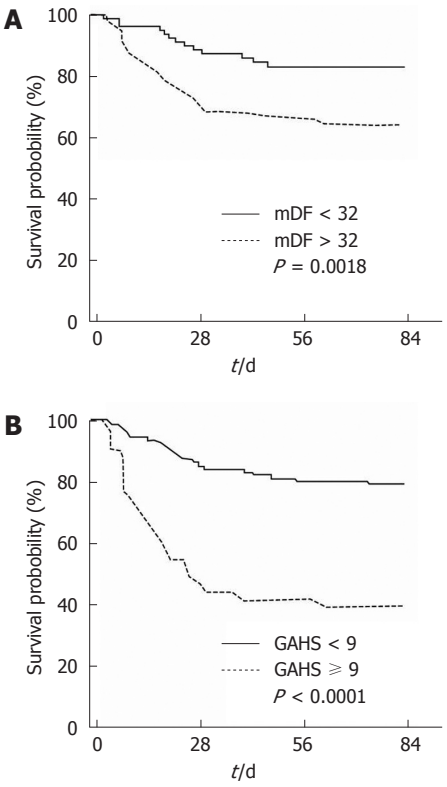


Figure 5 Kaplan-Meier survival analysis relative to the modified Maddrey discriminant function (mDF) (A) and the Glasgow alcoholic hepatitis score (GAHS) (B). The Glasgow score was developed on 241 patients and validated on 195 separate patients[44].

drial dysfunction in an animal model of ALD by protecting various mitochondrial enzymes, most likely through reducing oxidative/nitrosative stress[55]. The clinical use of similar medicaments would probably be always hampered by alcohol abusers´ failure to comply.

TREATMENT

Absolute abstinence is essential to consider any treatment for alcoholic liver disease. Even major changes, including cirrhotic restructuring, may show partial regression during total abstinence[56]. Portal hypertension declines and even regression of esophageal varices have been reported in abstainers. This, however, appears to have resulted from the remission of inflammatory changes and steatosis rather than from regressing fibrosis or cirrhosis. Sustained abstinence markedly improves the patient's prognosis in any phase of the liver disease[57], prevents the progression of the disease and fibrosis and, probably, also the development of hepatocellular carcinoma[58].

Pharmacotherapy of liver disease has but a supportive and rather dubious relevance. Treatment with silymarin, essential phospholipids or vitamin preparations was very popular in the past. Since an oxidative stress has been implicated in the pathophysiology of hepatic insult, the use of natural compounds with anti-oxidant properties represents an extremely popular therapeutic option for the treatment of liver disease. One such phytochemical, resveratrol, is remarkable as it is known as a major constituent of an alcoholic beverage, red wine. Resveratrol was shown to prevent liver injury by means of scavenging free radicals and inflammatory cytokines in experimental studies[59]. Its clinical utilization, though, is still far away. There are no conclusive data to prove the efficacy of any antioxidant medicaments for longer survival time or improved clinical conditions in the treatment of ALD. These are mostly cases of rather costly placebo. In contrast, dietary readjustment in the sense of sufficient energy intake and adequate supply of proteins is of value because malnutrition is a very poor prognostic factor in liver diseases[60]. What has been described as "liver diet" with increased supply of saccharides at the restriction of proteins and fats has no substantiation. Appropriate caloric intake with sufficient supply of proteins and polyunsaturated fats is important[34,61].

Severe alcoholic hepatitis has been treated with corticoids in many trials, with the best results in patients with hepatic encephalopathy, Maddrey score > 32 or Glasgow score > 9[62]. The Glasgow score is very simple to evaluate and its prognostic value is also greater than that of any other classification (Figure 5). The corticoid dose in that case is 40 mg prednisolone per day. The side effects of glucocorticosteroids must be also taken into consideration, as some patients on glucocorticosteroids experience adverse effects, mainly in the form hyperglycemia, Cushing's syndrome and increased risk of infection[63]. Despite the fact that the available trials are rather heterogeneous and some authors do not recommend the use of steroids in alcoholic hepatitis, recently published data emphasize the effect of corticosteroids on short-term survival of patients with severe alcoholic hepatitis[64], particularly in those with Maddrey score > 32.

Some trials and reviews of pentoxifylline (PTX) have shown a better risk/benefit profile than that of steroids and suggested that PTX could be a better first-line treatment in patients with severe AH. The efficacy of PTX in severe AH was first demonstrated by Akrividais *et al*[65] in 2000 on a group of 101 patients with severe AH. 24.5% of the patients who received PTX died during their index hospitalization, compared to a 46.1% mortality in the placebo group ($P = 0.037$). Remarkably, hepatorenal syndrome was the cause of death in 50% of patients on PTX compared to 91.7% of the HRS-related deaths in the placebo group ($P = 0.009$). According to the authors, the benefit appears to be related to a significant decrease in the risk of developing hepatorenal syndrome. In fact, renal dysfunction is frequent in patients with severe alcoholic hepatitis and, it seems, could be prevented with PTX[66].

Even in direct comparison with corticosteroids in a randomized trial, pentoxifylline was found to be superior to prednisolone for the management of severe alcoholic hepatitis regarding reduced mortality, improved risk-benefit profile and renoprotective effect[67]. Nevertheless, this observation should be confirmed on a larger cohort of patients[68]. A recent study by Lebrec *et al*[69] stopped short of confirming the effect of PTX on better survival but,

unlike a previous study, only Child-Pugh class C patients were included. However, the study did confirm a reduced risk of complications, such as bacterial infection, renal insufficiency, hepatic encephalopathy or gastrointestinal hemorrhage in patients treated with PTX compared to placebo.

Some centers recommend the use of PTX as the routine first line treatment of severe alcoholic hepatitis at a dose of 400 mg orally 3 times daily for a period of at least 4 wk[70]. They point to its safety, low cost and scope for long-term treatment. Significantly enough, the sweeping use of PTX as a first-line option is not generally recommended[71] and steroids should be used in patients with severe alcoholic hepatitis. Pentoxifylline could be used in patients with ineffectiveness or contraindications to steroids. The combination of pentoxifylline and steroids waits for clinical evaluation.

Biological treatment with anti- TNF-α antibodies fell short of expectations[72,73] so it can no longer be recommended for the management of alcoholic hepatitis[74].

Many studies with diverse conclusions have been published on the subject of nutrition and alcoholic hepatitis. In general, patients with alcoholic liver disease are frequently malnourished, a condition which worsens the prognosis[75]. However, the situation is not all that easy, as the spectrum of nutritional status in these patients may range from severe malnutrition to morbid obesity. The nutritional intervention on an outpatient basis depends on the degree of malnutrition, obesity and cooperation. In general, supplementation of multivitamins, folic acid and thiamine could be of value in chronic alcohol abuse, but data in the relevant literature are limited. Night-time nutritional supplements (approximately 700 kcal/d) may prevent muscle wasting and improve lean muscle mass in patients with liver cirrhosis[76] and should be considered, also relative to alcoholic hepatitis in patients with evidence of liver cirrhosis.

More data are available regarding the treatment of severe alcoholic hepatitis by enteral nutrition. The benefit of tube-feeding over the regular diet was demonstrated previously[77]. Patients on tube-fed nutrition had improved PSE scores, bilirubin and antipyrine clearance.

Many reviews and recommendations refer to a study by Cabre *et al*[78], which clearly demonstrated the efficacy of tube-fed nutrition. In their multi-center study, 71 patients with severe alcoholic hepatitis were randomized to receive 40 mg/d prednisolone or enteral tube feeding for 28 d and were followed up for 1 year. Mortality during the treatment was similar in both groups but during the follow-up significantly higher with steroids (37% *vs* 8%; $P = 0.04$), mainly because of infections with steroid treatment. The authors concluded that, unlike steroids, enteral nutrition had similar short-term mortality rates, improved 1 year mortality rates and reduced infectious complications. While some studies refrain from confirming any favorable effect of enteral feeding on survival, the implementation of tube-feeding in the treatment of acute alcoholic hepatitis is generally accepted[79]. There are only inconsistent data concerning the use of parenteral nutrition.

Despite the progress in the treatment of severe acute alcoholic hepatitis, the prognosis is still poor.

Alcoholic cirrhosis as such is treated in the same way as cirrhosis of other etiology; in particular, with adequate nutrition, bone disease prevention and prevention or treatment of liver cirrhosis complications (e.g., bleeding from esophageal varices, ascites, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, hepatic encephalopathy)[80].

Quite a few medicinal products were tested for the treatment of alcoholic cirrhosis: antiphlogistics/propylthiuracil[81], colchicine[82], antioxidants/silymarin[83,84] and also phosphatidylcholine[85]. However, none of these were found to have a favorable effect on survival time and none are recommended for this particular indication any longer. Medicaments with a direct antifibrotic effect are still under evaluation[86].

Patients with advanced cirrhosis can be considered for liver transplantation, provided they are total abstainers[87]. In such cases, a five year post-transplantation survival can reach anything up to 85%[88].

CONCLUSION

Long-term intake of more than 30 g of absolute alcohol per day increases the risk of alcoholic liver disease; liver disease is nearly certain in long-term consumption in excess of 80 g of absolute alcohol per day. Alcoholic liver disease may take the chronic form (steatosis, steatohepatitis, fibrosis, cirrhosis) or that of acute hepatitis. Steatosis is fully reversible, which does not apply to the other conditions; cirrhosis is associated with a markedly shortened life expectancy. The results of laboratory testing in alcoholic liver disease usually include: increased GGT, AST/ALT ratio greater than 2 and increased MCV. Sonography will reveal enlarged liver and signs of steatosis. Absolute abstinence is an essential therapeutic precaution; no hepatoprotective treatment has been shown to improve the course of the disease. Likewise, there is no medicine that would demonstrably "protect" from the effects of alcohol.

The clinical course of severe alcoholic hepatitis could be improved with corticoids, enteral nutrition and pentoxifylline, although more clinical data are necessary to standardize or combine this treatment.

Patients with advanced cirrhosis should be considered for liver transplantation, provided they are verifiable abstainers.

REFERENCES

1 **Sherlock S,** Dooley J. Diseases of the Liver and Biliary System. 11th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing, 2002: 381-398
2 **Bosetti C**, Levi F, Lucchini F, Zatonski WA, Negri E, La Vecchia C. Worldwide mortality from cirrhosis: an update to 2002. *J Hepatol* 2007; **46**: 827-839
3 **Caballeria J.** Epidemiological aspects of alcoholic liver disease. In: Rodes J, Benhamou JP, Blei A, Reichen J, Mario Rizzetto, editors. Textbook of Hepatology. Oxford: Blackwell

Publishing, 2007: 1129-1134
4 **Zhou L**, Conner KR, Phillips MR, Caine ED, Xiao S, Zhang R, Gong Y. Epidemiology of alcohol abuse and dependence in rural chinese men. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2009; **33**: 1770-1776
5 **Sharma HK**, Tripathi BM, Pelto PJ. The evolution of alcohol use in India. *AIDS Behav* 2010; **14** Suppl 1: S8-S17
6 **Pithey A**, Parry C. Descriptive systematic review of Sub-Saharan African studies on the association between alcohol use and HIV infection. *SAHARA J* 2009; **6**: 155-169
7 **Fisher JC**, Cook PA, Sam NE, Kapiga SH. Patterns of alcohol use, problem drinking, and HIV infection among high-risk African women. *Sex Transm Dis* 2008; **35**: 537-544
8 **Bellentani S**, Tiribelli C. The spectrum of liver disease in the general population: lesson from the Dionysos study. *J Hepatol* 2001; **35**: 531-537
9 **Barrio E**, Tomé S, Rodríguez I, Gude F, Sánchez-Leira J, Pérez-Becerra E, González-Quintela A. Liver disease in heavy drinkers with and without alcohol withdrawal syndrome. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2004; **28**: 131-136
10 **Bellentani S**, Saccoccio G, Costa G, Tiribelli C, Manenti F, Sodde M, Saveria Crocè L, Sasso F, Pozzato G, Cristianini G, Brandi G. Drinking habits as cofactors of risk for alcohol induced liver damage. The Dionysos Study Group. *Gut* 1997; **41**: 845-850
11 **Snow WM**, Murray R, Ekuma O, Tyas SL, Barnes GE. Alcohol use and cardiovascular health outcomes: a comparison across age and gender in the Winnipeg Health and Drinking Survey Cohort. *Age Ageing* 2009; **38**: 206-212
12 **Harriss LR**, English DR, Hopper JL, Powles J, Simpson JA, O'Dea K, Giles GG, Tonkin AM. Alcohol consumption and cardiovascular mortality accounting for possible misclassification of intake: 11-year follow-up of the Melbourne Collaborative Cohort Study. *Addiction* 2007; **102**: 1574-1585
13 **Lu XL**, Luo JY, Tao M, Gen Y, Zhao P, Zhao HL, Zhang XD, Dong N. Risk factors for alcoholic liver disease in China. *World J Gastroenterol* 2004; **10**: 2423-2426
14 **Roizen R**, Kerr WC, Fillmore KM. Cirrhosis mortality and per capita consumption of distilled spirits, United States, 1949-94: trend analysis. *BMJ* 1999; **319**: 666-670
15 **Kerr WC**, Fillmore KM, Marvy P. Beverage-specific alcohol consumption and cirrhosis mortality in a group of English-speaking beer-drinking countries. *Addiction* 2000; **95**: 339-346
16 **Marugame T**, Yamamoto S, Yoshimi I, Sobue T, Inoue M, Tsugane S. Patterns of alcohol drinking and all-cause mortality: results from a large-scale population-based cohort study in Japan. *Am J Epidemiol* 2007; **165**: 1039-1046
17 **Frezza M**, di Padova C, Pozzato G, Terpin M, Baraona E, Lieber CS. High blood alcohol levels in women. The role of decreased gastric alcohol dehydrogenase activity and first-pass metabolism. *N Engl J Med* 1990; **322**: 95-99
18 **Yin M**, Wheeler MD, Kono H, Bradford BU, Gallucci RM, Luster MI, Thurman RG. Essential role of tumor necrosis factor alpha in alcohol-induced liver injury in mice. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **117**: 942-952
19 **Donohue TM**. Alcohol-induced steatosis in liver cells. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 4974-4978
20 **Song Z**, Zhou Z, Deaciuc I, Chen T, McClain CJ. Inhibition of adiponectin production by homocysteine: a potential mechanism for alcoholic liver disease. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 867-879
21 **Bhattacharya R**, Shuhart MC. Hepatitis C and alcohol: interactions, outcomes, and implications. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2003; **36**: 242-252
22 **Naveau S**, Giraud V, Borotto E, Aubert A, Capron F, Chaput JC. Excess weight risk factor for alcoholic liver disease. *Hepatology* 1997; **25**: 108-111
23 **Siu L**, Foont J, Wands JR. Hepatitis C virus and alcohol. *Semin Liver Dis* 2009; **29**: 188-199
24 **Shen Z**, Li Y, Yu C, Shen Y, Xu L, Xu C, Xu G. A cohort study of the effect of alcohol consumption and obesity on serum liver enzyme levels. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **22**: 820-825
25 **Wilfred de Alwis NM**, Day CP. Genetics of alcoholic liver disease and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Semin Liver Dis* 2007; **27**: 44-54
26 **Juran BD**, Lazaridis KN. Genomics and complex liver disease: Challenges and opportunities. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 1380-1390
27 **Whitfield JB**. Meta-analysis of the effects of alcohol dehydrogenase genotype on alcohol dependence and alcoholic liver disease. *Alcohol Alcohol* 1997; **32**: 613-619
28 **Thomasson HR**, Crabb DW, Edenberg HJ, Li TK, Hwu HG, Chen CC, Yeh EK, Yin SJ. Low frequency of the ADH2*2 allele among Atayal natives of Taiwan with alcohol use disorders. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 1994; **18**: 640-643
29 **Edenberg HJ**, Dick DM, Xuei X, Tian H, Almasy L, Bauer LO, Crowe RR, Goate A, Hesselbrock V, Jones K, Kwon J, Li TK, Nurnberger JI, O'Connor SJ, Reich T, Rice J, Schuckit MA, Porjesz B, Foroud T, Begleiter H. Variations in GABRA2, encoding the alpha 2 subunit of the GABA(A) receptor, are associated with alcohol dependence and with brain oscillations. *Am J Hum Genet* 2004; **74**: 705-714
30 **Reed T**, Page WF, Viken RJ, Christian JC. Genetic predisposition to organ-specific endpoints of alcoholism. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 1996; **20**: 1528-1533
31 **Willner IR**, Reuben A. Alcohol and the liver. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2005; **21**: 323-330
32 **Valenti L**, De Feo T, Fracanzani AL, Fatta E, Salvagnini M, Aricò S, Rossi G, Fiorelli G, Fargion S. Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 A49G polymorphism is associated with susceptibility to and severity of alcoholic liver disease in Italian patients. *Alcohol Alcohol* 2004; **39**: 276-280
33 **Arteel G**, Marsano L, Mendez C, Bentley F, McClain CJ. Advances in alcoholic liver disease. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2003; **17**: 625-647
34 **Plauth M**, Cabré E, Campillo B, Kondrup J, Marchesini G, Schütz T, Shenkin A, Wendon J. ESPEN Guidelines on Parenteral Nutrition: hepatology. *Clin Nutr* 2009; **28**: 436-444
35 **Teli MR**, Day CP, Burt AD, Bennett MK, James OF. Determinants of progression to cirrhosis or fibrosis in pure alcoholic fatty liver. *Lancet* 1995; **346**: 987-990
36 **Poynard T**, McHutchison J, Davis GL, Esteban-Mur R, Goodman Z, Bedossa P, Albrecht J. Impact of interferon alfa-2b and ribavirin on progression of liver fibrosis in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 1131-1137
37 **Mu YP**, Ogawa T, Kawada N. Reversibility of fibrosis, inflammation, and endoplasmic reticulum stress in the liver of rats fed a methionine-choline-deficient diet. *Lab Invest* 2010; **90**: 245-256
38 **Stewart SF**, Day CP: Alcoholic liver disease. In: Boyer TD, Wright TL, Manns MP, editors. Zakim and Boyer's Hepatology. A textbook of liver disease. Philalphia: Elsevier 2006: 579-623
39 **Reeves HL**, Burt AD, Wood S, Day CP. Hepatic stellate cell activation occurs in the absence of hepatitis in alcoholic liver disease and correlates with the severity of steatosis. *J Hepatol* 1996; **25**: 677-683
40 **Teli MR**, James OF, Burt AD, Bennett MK, Day CP. The natural history of nonalcoholic fatty liver: a follow-up study. *Hepatology* 1995; **22**: 1714-1719
41 **Diehl AM**. Liver disease in alcohol abusers: clinical perspective. *Alcohol* 2002; **27**: 7-11
42 **Maddrey WC**, Boitnott JK, Bedine MS, Weber FL, Mezey E, White RI. Corticosteroid therapy of alcoholic hepatitis. *Gastroenterology* 1978; **75**: 193-199
43 **Srikureja W**, Kyulo NL, Runyon BA, Hu KQ. MELD score is a better prognostic model than Child-Turcotte-Pugh score or Discriminant Function score in patients with alcoholic hepatitis. *J Hepatol* 2005; **42**: 700-706
44 **Forrest EH**, Evans CD, Stewart S, Phillips M, Oo YH, McAvoy NC, Fisher NC, Singhal S, Brind A, Haydon G, O'Grady

J, Day CP, Hayes PC, Murray LS, Morris AJ. Analysis of factors predictive of mortality in alcoholic hepatitis and derivation and validation of the Glasgow alcoholic hepatitis score. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1174-1179
45 **Sebastiani G**. Non-invasive assessment of liver fibrosis in chronic liver diseases: implementation in clinical practice and decisional algorithms. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 2190-2203
46 **Yeshua H**, Oren R. Non invasive assessment of liver fibrosis. *Ann Transplant* 2008; **13**: 5-11
47 **Willenbring ML**, Massey SH, Gardner MB. Helping patients who drink too much: an evidence-based guide for primary care clinicians. *Am Fam Physician* 2009; **80**: 44-50
48 **Bradley KA**, DeBenedetti AF, Volk RJ, Williams EC, Frank D, Kivlahan DR. AUDIT-C as a brief screen for alcohol misuse in primary care. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2007; **31**: 1208-1217
49 **Palmer RB**. A review of the use of ethyl glucuronide as a marker for ethanol consumption in forensic and clinical medicine. *Semin Diagn Pathol* 2009; **26**: 18-27
50 **Dousa M,** Zima T, Bruha R, Svestka T, Petrtyl J. Sensitivity and specificity of CDT in the evaluation of alcohol abuse in cirrhotic patients. *Gut* 2006; **55**: A307
51 **Tsukamoto H**. Conceptual importance of identifying alcoholic liver disease as a lifestyle disease. *J Gastroenterol* 2007; **42**: 603-609
52 **Johnson BA**. Update on neuropharmacological treatments for alcoholism: scientific basis and clinical findings. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2008; **75**: 34-56
53 **Rösner S**, Hackl-Herrwerth A, Leucht S, Lehert P, Vecchi S, Soyka M. Acamprosate for alcohol dependence. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2010; CD004332
54 **Finney JW**, Hahn AC, Moos RH. The effectiveness of inpatient and outpatient treatment for alcohol abuse: the need to focus on mediators and moderators of setting effects. *Addiction* 1996; **91**: 1773-1796; discussion 1773-1796
55 **Song BJ**, Moon KH, Olsson NU, Salem N. Prevention of alcoholic fatty liver and mitochondrial dysfunction in the rat by long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids. *J Hepatol* 2008; **49**: 262-273
56 **Tilg H**, Day CP. Management strategies in alcoholic liver disease. *Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **4**: 24-34
57 **Powell WJ**, Klatskin G. Duration of survival in patients with Laennec's cirrhosis. Influence of alcohol withdrawal, and possible effects of recent changes in general management of the disease. *Am J Med* 1968; **44**: 406-420
58 **Morgan MY**. The prognosis and outcome of alcoholic liver disease. *Alcohol Alcohol Suppl* 1994; **2**: 335-343
59 **Bishayee A**, Darvesh AS, Politis T, McGory R. Resveratrol and liver disease: from bench to bedside and community. *Liver Int* 2010; **30**: 1103-1114
60 **Alberino F**, Gatta A, Amodio P, Merkel C, Di Pascoli L, Boffo G, Caregaro L. Nutrition and survival in patients with liver cirrhosis. *Nutrition* 2001; **17**: 445-450
61 **ASPEN Board of Directors and the Clinical Guidelines Task Force.** Guidelines for the use of parenteral and enteral nutrition in adult and pediatric patients. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr* 2002; **26**: 1SA-138SA
62 **Forrest EH**, Morris AJ, Stewart S, Phillips M, Oo YH, Fisher NC, Haydon G, O'Grady J, Day CP. The Glasgow alcoholic hepatitis score identifies patients who may benefit from corticosteroids. *Gut* 2007; **56**: 1743-1746
63 **Rambaldi A**, Saconato HH, Christensen E, Thorlund K, Wetterslev J, Gluud C. Systematic review: glucocorticosteroids for alcoholic hepatitis--a Cochrane Hepato-Biliary Group systematic review with meta-analyses and trial sequential analyses of randomized clinical trials. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **27**: 1167-1178
64 **Mathurin P**, O'Grady J, Carithers RL, Phillips M, Louvet A, Mendenhall CL, Ramond MJ, Naveau S, Maddrey WC, Morgan TR. Corticosteroids improve short-term survival in patients with severe alcoholic hepatitis: meta-analysis of individual patient data. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 255-260
65 **Akriviadis E**, Botla R, Briggs W, Han S, Reynolds T, Shakil O. Pentoxifylline improves short-term survival in severe acute alcoholic hepatitis: a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119**: 1637-1648
66 **Arora R**, Kathuria S, Jalandhara N. Acute renal dysfunction in patients with alcoholic hepatitis. *World J Hepatol* 2011; **3**: 121-124
67 **De BK**, Gangopadhyay S, Dutta D, Baksi SD, Pani A, Ghosh P. Pentoxifylline versus prednisolone for severe alcoholic hepatitis: a randomized controlled trial. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 1613-1619
68 **Whitfield K**, Rambaldi A, Wetterslev J, Gluud C. Pentoxifylline for alcoholic hepatitis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2009; CD007339
69 **Lebrec D**, Thabut D, Oberti F, Perarnau JM, Condat B, Barraud H, Saliba F, Carbonell N, Renard P, Ramond MJ, Moreau R, Poynard T. Pentoxifylline does not decrease short-term mortality but does reduce complications in patients with advanced cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 1755-1762
70 **Amini M**, Runyon BA. Alcoholic hepatitis 2010: a clinician' s guide to diagnosis and therapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 4905-4912
71 **Braillon A**. Severe alcoholic hepatitis: glucocorticoid saves lives and transplantation is promising. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 2454
72 **Naveau S**, Chollet-Martin S, Dharancy S, Mathurin P, Jouet P, Piquet MA, Davion T, Oberti F, Broët P, Emilie D. A double-blind randomized controlled trial of infliximab associated with prednisolone in acute alcoholic hepatitis. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 1390-1397
73 **Boetticher NC**, Peine CJ, Kwo P, Abrams GA, Patel T, Aqel B, Boardman L, Gores GJ, Harmsen WS, McClain CJ, Kamath PS, Shah VH. A randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled multicenter trial of etanercept in the treatment of alcoholic hepatitis. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 1953-1960
74 **Lucey MR**, Mathurin P, Morgan TR. Alcoholic hepatitis. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 2758-2769
75 **Halsted CH**. Nutrition and alcoholic liver disease. *Semin Liver Dis* 2004; **24**: 289-304
76 **Plank LD**, Gane EJ, Peng S, Muthu C, Mathur S, Gillanders L, McIlroy K, Donaghy AJ, McCall JL. Nocturnal nutritional supplementation improves total body protein status of patients with liver cirrhosis: a randomized 12-month trial. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 557-566
77 **Kearns PJ**, Young H, Garcia G, Blaschke T, O'Hanlon G, Rinki M, Sucher K, Gregory P. Accelerated improvement of alcoholic liver disease with enteral nutrition. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **102**: 200-205
78 **Cabré E**, Rodríguez-Iglesias P, Caballería J, Quer JC, Sánchez-Lombraña JL, Parés A, Papo M, Planas R, Gassull MA. Short- and long-term outcome of severe alcohol-induced hepatitis treated with steroids or enteral nutrition: a multicenter randomized trial. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 36-42
79 **Plauth M**, Cabré E, Riggio O, Assis-Camilo M, Pirlich M, Kondrup J, Ferenci P, Holm E, Vom Dahl S, Müller MJ, Nolte W. ESPEN Guidelines on Enteral Nutrition: Liver disease. *Clin Nutr* 2006; **25**: 285-294
80 **Brůha R**, Petrtýl J, Urbánek P, Svestka T, Kaláb M, Marecek Z. [Long-term pharmacological treatment of portal hypertension]. *Cas Lek Cesk* 2005; **144** Suppl 1: 63-66
81 **Orrego H**, Blake JE, Blendis LM, Compton KV, Israel Y. Long-term treatment of alcoholic liver disease with propylthiouracil. *N Engl J Med* 1987; **317**: 1421-1427
82 **Morgan TR**, Weiss DG, Nemchausky B, Schiff ER, Anand B, Simon F, Kidao J, Cecil B, Mendenhall CL, Nelson D, Lieber C, Pedrosa M, Jeffers L, Bloor J, Lumeng L, Marsano L, Mc-

Clain C, Mishra G, Myers B, Leo M, Ponomarenko Y, Taylor D, Chedid A, French S, Kanel G, Murray N, Pinto P, Fong TL, Sather MR. Colchicine treatment of alcoholic cirrhosis: a randomized, placebo-controlled clinical trial of patient survival. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 882-890

83 **Parés A**, Planas R, Torres M, Caballería J, Viver JM, Acero D, Panés J, Rigau J, Santos J, Rodés J. Effects of silymarin in alcoholic patients with cirrhosis of the liver: results of a controlled, double-blind, randomized and multicenter trial. *J Hepatol* 1998; **28**: 615-621

84 **Jacobs BP**, Dennehy C, Ramirez G, Sapp J, Lawrence VA. Milk thistle for the treatment of liver disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Med* 2002; **113**: 506-515

85 **Lieber CS**, Weiss DG, Groszmann R, Paronetto F, Schenker S. II. Veterans Affairs Cooperative Study of polyenylphosphatidylcholine in alcoholic liver disease. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2003; **27**: 1765-1772

86 **Popov Y**, Schuppan D. Targeting liver fibrosis: strategies for development and validation of antifibrotic therapies. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 1294-1306

87 **McCallum S**, Masterton G. Liver transplantation for alcoholic liver disease: a systematic review of psychosocial selection criteria. *Alcohol Alcohol* 2006; **41**: 358-363

88 **Ryska M**, Trunecka P. [Liver transplantation--present status worldwide and in the Czech Republic]. *Cas Lek Cesk* 2003; **142**: 717-726

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zhang DN

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.91

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): 91-98
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Francesca Cainelli, MD, *Series Editor*

Human immunodeficiency virus infection and the liver

Megan Crane, David Iser, Sharon R Lewin

Megan Crane, Sharon R Lewin, Department of Medicine, Monash University, Melbourne 3004, Australia
Megan Crane, Sharon R Lewin, Centre for Virology, Burnet Institute, Melbourne 3004, Australia
David Iser, Department of Gastroenterology, St Vincent's Hospital, Melbourne 3004, Australia
David Iser, Sharon R Lewin, Infectious Disease Unit, The Alfred, Melbourne 3004, Australia
Author contributions: Crane M, Iser D and Lewin SR all contributed equally to writing this manuscript.
Supported by An NHMRC Practitioner Fellowship to Lewin SR; an amFAR Mathilde Krim Fellowship in Basic Biomedical Science to Crane M; and an NHMRC postgraduate scholarship to Iser D
Correspondence to: Sharon R Lewin, Professor, Director, Infectious Diseases Unit, The Alfred, Level 2, Burnet Building, 85 Commercial Rd, Melbourne 3004, Australia. sharon.lewin@monash.edu
Telephone: +61-3-90768491 Fax: +61-3-90762431
Received: February 28, 2011 Revised: November 4, 2011
Accepted: March 17, 2012
Published online: March 27, 2012

Abstract

Liver disease in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected individuals encompasses the spectrum from abnormal liver function tests, liver decompensation, with and without evidence of cirrhosis on biopsy, to non-alcoholic liver disease and its more severe form, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis and hepatocellular cancer. HIV can infect multiple cells in the liver, leading to enhanced intrahepatic apoptosis, activation and fibrosis. HIV can also alter gastro-intestinal tract permeability, leading to increased levels of circulating lipopolysaccharide that may have an impact on liver function. This review focuses on recent changes in the epidemiology, pathogenesis and clinical presentation of liver disease in HIV-infected patients, in the absence of co-infection with hepatitis B virus or hepatitis C virus, with a specific focus on issues relevant to low and middle income countries.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus; Liver disease; Low-middle income settings

Peer reviewers: Dr. Andrea Mancuso, Epatologia e Gastroenterologia, AO Ospedale Niguarda Cà Granda, Piazza Ospedale Maggiore 3, 20162 Milano, Italy; Dr. Lang Zhuo, Department of Cell and Tissue Engineering, Institute of Bioengineering and Nanotechnology, 31 Biopolis Way, The Nanos 04-16, Singapore 138669, Singapore

Crane M, Iser D, Lewin SR. Human immunodeficiency virus infection and the liver. *World J Hepatol* 2012; 4(3): 91-98 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v4/i3/91.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.91

INTRODUCTION

There are 33 million people infected with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) globally with the greatest burden of disease in low and middle income countries. With the increased availability of antiretroviral therapy (ART), the number of people surviving with HIV and presenting with liver disease is increasing[1]. Most clinical trials and cohort studies have studied liver disease in HIV-infected individuals living in high income countries but liver disease is likely to emerge as an important co-morbidity in HIV-infected patients in low and middle income countries.

In the absence of co-infection with either hepatitis B virus (HBV) or hepatitis C virus (HCV), liver disease in HIV-infected individuals encompasses the spectrum from abnormal liver function tests, liver decompensation, with and without evidence of cirrhosis on biopsy, to non-alcoholic liver disease (NAFLD) and its more severe form, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) and hepatocellular cancer (HCC)[2-6]. This review focuses on recent changes in the epidemiology, pathogenesis and clinical presentation of

liver disease in HIV-infected patients with a specific focus on issues relevant to low and middle income countries.

EPIDEMIOLOGY OF HIV AND LIVER DISEASE

Liver disease, including liver-related mortality secondary to chronic liver disease and HCC, is an emerging management problem in HIV-infected individuals in high income countries, where people are surviving longer on ART[1]. In the most recent data collection on adverse events of anti-HIV drugs (D:A:D) study of over 33 000 individuals, liver related deaths were the commonest cause of non-acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) mortality amongst HIV-infected individuals[1]. While liver related deaths were strongly associated with viral hepatitis (84% of liver related deaths, 11% of total deaths), 16% of the liver related deaths (or 2.3% of the total deaths) in this population occurred in the absence of viral hepatitis[1].

Liver-related mortality in HIV-infected patients not co-infected with HBV or HCV has not been widely studied in low and middle income countries. In a retrospective South American study of serious non-AIDS events in the LATINA cohort (comprising over 6000 HIV-infected individuals on ART from Brazil, Mexico, Peru and Argentina), terminal liver failure or cirrhosis was the leading cause of death with 54/130 (42%) confirmed or probable cases based on clinical, laboratory and histological findings[7]. In this study, co-infection with HBV or HCV and low CD4 count were the major risk factors[7]. Similarly, a post-mortem study of 86 HIV-infected individuals undergoing autopsy in rural South Africa demonstrated that 10% had liver related conditions at the time of death[8]; however, it is likely that co-infection with viral hepatitis was a contributing factor.

Chronic liver disease, as measured by raised alanine aminotransferase (ALT), has been widely studied in HIV-infected individuals, particularly in high income settings. In a Swiss cohort of 2365 HIV-infected individuals not co-infected with either HBV or HCV, 385 (16%) had chronically elevated ALT (defined as > 2 × upper limit of normal)[9]. Risk factors associated with elevated ALT were high HIV RNA and prolonged ART exposure as well as high body mass index (BMI), alcohol abuse and increasing age[9]. A number of studies have now shown a link between BMI, high cholesterol levels, diabetes mellitus and liver disease in HIV mono-infection in high income countries[9-11], indicating lifestyle may play a significant role in the development of liver disease amongst HIV-infected individuals. Of concern, high BMI and diabetes mellitus are increasingly reported in low and middle income countries[12]. Ocama *et al*[13] recently reported that following 36 mo of ART in a cohort of 546 individuals in Kampala, only 1.5% had grade 3 aspartate aminotransferase (AST) elevations. In this study, a subset (n = 470) of patients were tested for HBV surface antigen and 9% were positive. A study of 59 individuals in Mexico showed a moderately strong positive correlation between elevated transaminases and HIV RNA in individuals not receiving ART and without viral hepatitis co-infection[14], consistent with reports from North America[11].

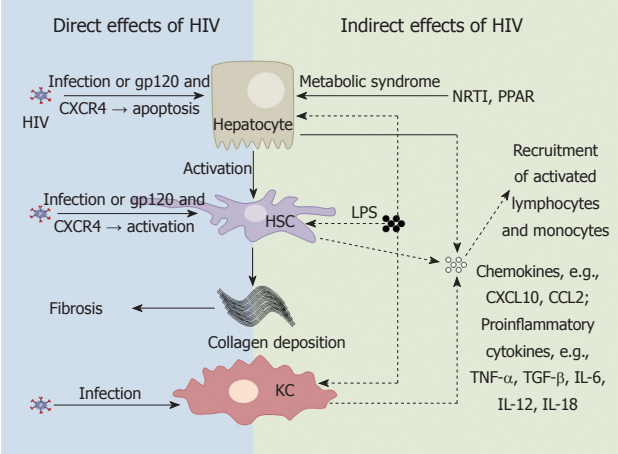


Figure 1 Human immunodeficiency infection and the liver. Mechanisms by which human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection of liver cells can contribute to liver disease progression by either direct (left panel) or indirect (right panel) mechanisms. HIV can directly infect hepatocytes, hepatic stellate cells (HSCs) and Kupffer cells (KCs). In the absence of productive infection, gp120 binding to CXCR4 may induce hepatocyte apoptosis and activation of HSCs, both contributing to fibrosis. Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs) and HIV itself [*via* peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor (PPAR) effects] may also contribute to liver disease by inducing the metabolic syndrome. HIV infection of the gastrointestinal tract leads to an increase in lipopolysaccharide (LPS) which can stimulate hepatocytes, KCs and HSCs to produce pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines which attract activated lymphocytes and monocytes to the liver which may further drive fibrosis. TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-α; TGF-β: Transforming growth factor-β; IL: Interleukin.

Data on HCC in HIV mono-infection in both low and high income countries is limited. In a study of over 3500 HIV-infected Chinese individuals, HCC was one of the leading causes of morbidity and mortality; however, this was primarily due to co-infection with viral hepatitis[15]. In a French prospective database study, a low CD4 count was a major risk factor for HCC with the rate ratio, or risk, increasing from 2 to 7.6 when comparing patients with a high CD4 count (> 500 cells/mL) to those with a low CD4 count (< 50 cells/mL) respectively[16]. Importantly for low and middle income countries, it has been demonstrated that the use of ART in individuals with low CD4 count (< 350 cells/mL) was associated with a reduced risk of hospitalization for liver related complications[17].

PATHOGENESIS OF HIV AND LIVER DISEASE

HIV may alter liver function by either direct or indirect mechanisms. HIV predominantly infects CD4+ T-cells, monocyte/macrophages and dendritic cells. However, there are multiple studies now showing HIV infection of a wide range of non hemapoietic cells, including cells in the liver. In addition, changes in gastrointestinal (GI) tract permeability *via* massive depletion of GI tract associated

CD4+ T-cells by HIV may have indirect consequences on immune activation and liver disease (Figure 1).

Direct effects of HIV on the liver

There are numerous studies demonstrating HIV infection of hepatic cells. Kupffer cells, differentiated tissue macrophages that reside in the liver, can be infected by HIV *in vivo*[18-20]. *In vitro* studies suggest that HIV infection of primary Kupffer cells leads to productive infection[21,22].

HIV RNA has also been detected in sinusoidal cells and hepatocytes *in vivo*[18,19]. Primary human sinusoidal cells have also been shown to be permissive to HIV infection *in vitro*[23]. A number of studies have demonstrated HIV infection of hepatocyte cell lines[24]. Infection of hepatocyte cell lines is thought to be CD4-independent as most hepatocyte cell lines, as well as primary hepatocytes, do not express CD4[24]. HIV infection of hepatocytes cells may therefore occur *via* receptor-mediated endocytosis or alternative co-receptors[25]. Hepatocytes may act as a transient HIV reservoir and promote CD4+ T cell infection by cell-cell contact[26].

HIV can also induce hepatocyte apoptosis *in vitro via* gp120 signalling through CXCR4 in the absence of infection[27]. Hepatocyte apoptosis can trigger pro-fibrotic activity of hepatic stellate cells (HSC) activity, as has been demonstrated in both HIV-HBV co-infection and HIV-HCV co-infection[28,29]. Further work is needed to determine the precise role of HIV-induced hepatic cell apoptosis and liver disease in HIV mono-infection.

HSCs are lipid storing cells and the main cells responsible for fibrogenesis in the liver. HIV infection of HSCs, including primary HSCs and the LX-2 stellate cell line, has recently been reported[30]. While HSCs express the HIV co-receptors CCR5 and CXCR4, HIV infection of HSCs appeared to be CD4-independent[30]. However, gp120 has also recently been shown to activate HSC *via* ligation of CXCR4[31]. HSCs infected with HIV or exposed to gp120 showed increased activation and fibrogenesis, as measured by alpha-smooth muscle actin and collagen production and increased levels of monocyte chemotactic protein-1 (MCP-1 or CCL-2). CCL-2 binds to CCR2 which is primarily expressed on activated pro-inflammatory monocytes and migration of these cells into the liver could potentially contribute to hepatic fibrosis and the accelerated progression to liver disease observed in HIV-HCV co-infected individuals[30,31].

Indirect effects of HIV on the liver

HIV infection of GI tract associated CD4+ T-cells leads to increased permeability to bacterial endotoxins such as lipopolysaccharide (LPS). Increased systemic levels of LPS are hypothesised to contribute to chronic immune activation in HIV-infected patients *via* activation of monocytes[32]. Kupffer cells are the main cell type in the liver that responds to LPS. When stimulated through ligation of the LPS receptor, toll like receptor (TLR)-4, Kupffer cells produce pro-inflammatory cytokines including tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β), interleukin-6 (IL-6), IL-12 and IL-18[33]. Under normal physiological conditions, Kupffer cells remain tolerant, or refractory, to repeated LPS stimulation[33]. Elevated LPS has been shown to contribute to liver disease progression in alcoholic liver disease[34], as well as in NAFLD and NASH[35-37], chronic HCV[38] and HIV-HCV co-infection[39]. In addition to activation of Kupffer cells, LPS also directly activates HSC to produce CCL-2[40], and *in vitro* following co-culture with monocytes, induces hepatocytes to produce chemokines CXCL9, 10 and 11[41]. These chemokines will induce chemotaxis of both T-cells and monocytes to the liver. In HIV-infected individuals, an increase in systemic LPS levels may therefore potentially contribute to liver disease progression, although to date this has not been demonstrated in the setting of HIV alone (Figure 1).

Finally, HIV may also contribute to the metabolic syndrome associated with NAFLD or NASH *via* several mechanisms. ART and chronic inflammation can promote insulin resistance[42], where free fatty acids are released from adipose tissue, leading to increased intrahepatic triglyceride droplets (macrosteatosis) or *via* mitochondrial toxicity (microsteatosis) and oxidative stress[43,44]. HIV has also been shown to modify the activity of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPAR)[45]. PPARs are a family of nuclear receptor transcription factors that regulate insulin sensitivity, glucose and lipid metabolism, as well as inflammation, tissue repair, carcinogenesis and fibrosis, and are expressed by hepatocytes, HSCs and Kupffer cells[46-48]. Two HIV accessory proteins, Vpr and Nef, have been shown to suppress PPAR-γ subtype activity *in vitro*[49,50]. One small study in HIV-infected individuals also showed a reduction in the mRNA levels of PPAR-γ and a correlation with increased liver fibrosis[51]. Suppression of PPAR-γ activity by HIV may therefore represent another mechanism by which HIV contributes to liver disease progression.

CLINICAL PRESENTATIONS OF LIVER DISEASE IN HIV MONO-INFECTION

Noncirrhotic portal hypertension

Portal hypertension has been described recently in HIV mono-infected individuals without other known risk factors for liver disease. Individuals may present with decompensated portal hypertension, such as ascites or bleeding esophageal varices, without histological cirrhosis on liver biopsy[2-5]. This clinical scenario has been variably termed "noncirrhotic portal hypertension" (NCPH)[52], idiopathic portal hypertension[3] or "cryptogenic pseudocirrhosis"[4] to differentiate it from cirrhosis from other etiologies.

Numerous case reports and series of individuals with NCPH in HIV have been described[2,52-60], including those undergoing liver transplantation[61]. NCPH has not yet been described in low and middle income countries. It is possible that NCPH has not been recognized due to limited availability of liver biopsy. Alternatively, the

Table 1 Potential causes for liver disease in human immunodeficiency virus infection[43]

Viral hepatitis	HBV, HCV, (HDV)	Co-infection common (up to 10%)
	HAV, HEV	Self-limited acute increase in ALT
Drug hepatotoxicity	Alcohol	Limited data in low and middle income countries
ART[1]	Nevirapine	Hypersensitivity, usually early (< 12 wk)
	Efavirenz	Direct liver cell stress or hypersensitivity
	Abacavir	Hypersensitivity, (predominantly in HLA B57 carriers)
	ddI, d4T	Mitochondrial toxicity with long-term use
	Ritonavir	Steatosis, metabolic disturbance
	Darunavir	Hypersensitivity
	Tipranavir	Hepatic failure reported with ritonavir 200 mg
	Maraviroc	Hypersensitivity with liver involvement
Anti-TB therapy[2]	Rifampicin	Drug interactions with ART and direct hepatotoxicity
	Isoniazid	Hepatotoxicity may be increased in HIV
	Pyrazinamide	Dose-related hepatotoxicity
Hepatotropic infections	Schistosomiasis	Leads to portal hypertension
	Leishmaniasis	Fever +/- hepatosplenomegaly
	Herpes viruses inc EBV CMV HHV6 HSV	Often cause raised transaminases, occasionally symptomatic hepatitis
	Liver abscess	Unlikely to cause chronic liver disease
HIV cholangiopathy		Usually when CD4 < 200 cells/μL
NAFLD		ART-related, prevalence unknown

[1]Raltegravir rarely causes hepatitis; [2]Ethambutol rarely associated with hepatitis, and may be due to concurrent therapy. HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HDV: Hepatitis D virus; HAV: Hepatitis A virus; HEV: Hepatitis E virus; ART: Anti-retroviral therapy; ddI: Didanosine; d4T: Stavudine; TB: Tuberculosis; NAFLD: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; EBV: Epstein barr virus; CMV: Cytomegalovirus; HHV: Human herpesvirus; HSV: Herpes simplex virus; HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; HLA: Human leukocyte antigen.

impact of NCPH may be overshadowed by more common diseases such as co-infection with viral hepatitis, pyogenic infections or tuberculosis[8,62,63]. NCPH has been described in adolescence[64] but the lead time prior to clinical presentation of NCPH may mean it remains a future problem for low and middle income countries.

Liver histology from individuals with HIV mono-infection and NCPH is variable and includes periportal or perisinusoidal fibrosis, low grade inflammation and steatosis[65]. However, a common pattern appears to be portal vein occlusion and focal fibrous obliteration of small portal veins, so-called "hepatic venopathy", often in the setting of nodular regenerative hyperplasia (NRH)[52,57].

A hypercoagulable state may contribute to the hepatic venopathy and NRH, as described in the antiphospholipid syndrome associated with rheumatoid arthritis[66]. Hypercoagulable states were identified in 8 out of 10 individuals with NCPH in one case series[57]. In a recent case-control study, NRH was seen in all 5 out of 11 individuals with NCPH where histology was available, and protein C and S activity was lower in cases than controls[67]. In another small case-control study including 15 individuals with confirmed esophageal varices and absence of cirrhosis on liver biopsy, periportal fibrosis was the most common hepatic lesion described and NRH was only seen in 1 patient[65]. A strong association between prolonged exposure to didanosine (ddI) and the development of NCPH was found in this study. Two cross sectional studies looking at associations between multiple clinical factors and NCPH have also demonstrated an association with prior and current use of ddI[2], as well as NASH[5]. ddI is now almost never used in high income countries but still frequently used in low and middle income countries, and therefore NCPH may soon be seen more frequently in these settings[68].

ART and liver disease

Hepatotoxicity due to ART may be related to agents from a number of classes, including nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs), non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs) and protease inhibitors[43] (Table 1). The severity of hepatotoxicity may range from transient elevations in transaminase levels to hepatic failure and death, *via* a variety of mechanisms. NNRTI such as nevirapine and efavirenz may cause hypersensitivity[69-71]. NRTI, primarily ddI, may cause direct mitochondrial toxicity leading to abnormal liver function[72]. Other mechanisms by which ART causes liver-related toxicity include direct cell stress and disturbances in lipid/sugar metabolism and steatosis, as seen with protease inhibitors[43]. The protease inhibitors ritonavir, tipranavir and darunavir have all been associated with elevations in ALT[43].

Fatty liver disease in HIV

NAFLD is now commonly reported in many high income countries in the presence and absence of HIV infection. The spectrum of NAFLD ranges from mild steatosis to NASH, which may progress to severe fibrosis and cirrhosis. NAFLD may be associated with other features of the metabolic syndrome, including central obesity, insulin resistance, diabetes mellitus and dyslipidemia, such as raised triglycerides, low high-density lipoproteins and raised low-density lipoproteins. NAFLD has been identified in up to 30% of HIV mono-infected Americans, although this study was unable to demonstrate

whether the prevalence of NAFLD was different to HIV-negative individuals[6]. While risk factors for NAFLD may be similar in people with or without HIV[73], a small study has suggested that people with HIV and NAFLD may be more physically active and less obese than HIV-negative individuals with NAFLD, and that other factors such as HIV itself or ART may contribute to NAFLD[74]. NAFLD is frequently described in the setting of HIV-HCV co-infection[75-77] where ART including ddI or stavudine may also be implicated[75]. Insulin resistance and NASH have been described in individuals with liver disease in HIV mono-infection[5,52]. Insulin resistance and exposure to ddI and/or stavudine were factors associated with advanced fibrosis in 681 HIV-HCV co-infected individuals in Spain[78]. Few studies of NAFLD have been published from low and middle income countries.

Co-infections other than HBV or HCV

Co-infection with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and its treatment are also important causes of liver disease in low and middle income countries and are summarised in Table 1. Hepatitis related to isoniazid therapy is common[79], and HIV or ART may increase the risk of isoniazid-related hepatotoxicity, as demonstrated in a small Ethiopian study[80]. Concomitant anti-tuberculosis therapy was associated with a 5-fold increased risk of abnormal aminotransferase levels in Ugandan individuals commencing NNRTI-based ART[81].

Schistosomiasis may also cause liver disease but was an uncommon cause of liver disease in HIV-infected individuals in Uganda in one study of 77 patients[62]. In a recent study using transient elastography (TE, FibroScan®) in 1000 individuals in Uganda, 14% of the 500 HIV-infected individuals had positive schistosomiasis serology[82]. Significant fibrosis (≥ F2, liver stiffness measurement ≥ 9.3 kPa) was detected in 17% of HIV-infected individuals. Positive schistosomiasis serology was not a significant predictor of cirrhosis [odds ratio 1.7, (0.9-3.3); $P = 0.10$] in this study but the authors concluded that schistosomiasis may play a role in the burden of liver disease in HIV-infected individuals in Uganda[82]. Further work is required to better understand the true relationship between HIV, schistosomiasis and liver disease.

The impact of other infections, including visceral leishmaniasis (also known as Kala-Azar), on liver disease in HIV infection is unclear but has been reported[83] and may cause chronic disease[84]. Amebic liver abscesses are frequently described in HIV infection[85] but are usually treatable and are unlikely to contribute significantly to ongoing liver disease[62]. HIV cholangiopathy in individuals with CD4 T-cell counts < 200 cells/mL may be due to infections with cytomegalovirus, cryptosporidium or microsporidium[63], although prevalence in low and middle income countries has not been reported.

Alcohol

Alcohol is a common cause of liver disease world-wide and is likely to be as important in low and middle income countries, as it is in HIV-infected individuals in high income countries[86]. Alcohol is responsible for significant morbidity and mortality in South Africa[87] and may also contribute to significant fibrosis detected by TE in Uganda[62]. However, data on alcohol consumption and its impact on liver disease in the setting of HIV in low and middle income countries are limited.

NON-INVASIVE ASSESSMENT OF LIVER DISEASE IN HIV MONO-INFECTION

The availability of liver biopsy is limited in low and middle income countries and non-invasive measures of liver fibrosis, such as TE, have been studied in many liver conditions but largely in high income countries[88]. Algorithms to diagnose liver disease severity based on a range of biochemical and hematological indices, such as FibroTest®, Hepascore or AST to platelet ratio index, have also been used[89]. Most data regarding TE come from studies of individuals with HCV[88]. TE is most reliable at detecting cirrhosis (F4) or severe fibrosis (F3/4) but is less reliable at differentiating absent or mild fibrosis (F0/1) from significant fibrosis or greater (F2/3/4)[88]. In many studies considered in a recent meta-analysis, the sensitivity for detecting at least significant fibrosis was less than 70%[88]. The mean area under the receiver operator characteristic curve (AUROC) was 0.84 (95% CI: 0.82-0.86), where a diagnostic tool is considered good if the AUROC is greater than 80% and excellent if the AUROC is greater than 90%[88]. The AUROC for the detection of cirrhosis was 0.94 (95% CI: 0.93-0.95).

Non-invasive measures like TE have been used to detect severe fibrosis in HIV-infected individuals with persistently elevated transaminase levels[2,5,90]. Few studies in low and middle income countries have been reported to date[82]. However, the convenience of TE and or biochemical or hematological indices offers great potential for screening and monitoring liver disease in large cohorts of HIV-infected individuals in low and middle income countries and there is a great need for further work in this area. A proposed algorithm for the use of TE in evaluating HIV-infected individuals is presented in Figure 2[91].

CONCLUSION

Liver disease in HIV-infected individuals, in the absence of co-infection with HBV or HCV, is an emerging issue in all settings. While ART related toxicities are an obvious cause, there is emerging evidence that HIV infection may have a direct impact on the pathogenesis of liver fibrosis, NAFLD and NASH and subsequent progression to liver disease. Further research is needed to determine the causal link between HIV infection and liver disease progression. Two potentially important risk factors for low and middle income countries in the development of liver disease are prolonged exposure to high HIV RNA and low CD4 count, providing further support for earlier initiation of ART. One of the major obstacles to

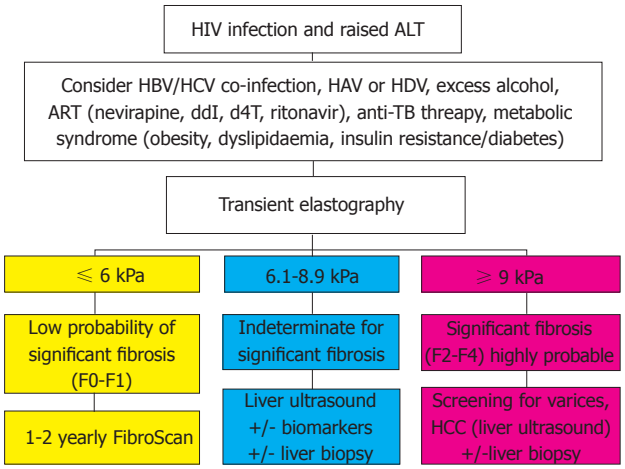


Figure 2 Proposed use of transient elastography (FibroScan) in human immunodeficiency virus infected individuals with raised liver enzymes (adapted from Ref.[91]). HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; HAV: Hepatitis A virus; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HDV: Hepatitis delta; ART: Anti-retroviral therapy; ddI: Didanosine; d4T: Stavudine; TB: Tuberculosis; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.

research into the epidemiology of the true incidence of liver disease in both high income and low and middle income countries is the lack of suitable non-invasive methods of determining liver disease progression. However, with the advent of newer convenient technologies, such as TE and non invasive plasma markers, we may see this change in the near future.

REFERENCES

1 **Smith C**, Sabin CA, Lundgren JD, Thiebaut R, Weber R, Law M, Monforte A, Kirk O, Friis-Moller N, Phillips A, Reiss P, El Sadr W, Pradier C, Worm SW. Factors associated with specific causes of death amongst HIV-positive individuals in the D: A: D Study. *AIDS* 2010; **24**: 1537-1548

2 **Maida I**, Garcia-Gasco P, Sotgiu G, Rios MJ, Vispo ME, Martin-Carbonero L, Barreiro P, Mura MS, Babudieri S, Albertos S, Garcia-Samaniego J, Soriano V. Antiretroviral-associated portal hypertension: a new clinical condition? Prevalence, predictors and outcome. *Antivir Ther* 2008; **13**: 103-107

3 **Chang PE**, Miquel R, Blanco JL, Laguno M, Bruguera M, Abraldes JG, Bosch J, Garcia-Pagan JC. Idiopathic portal hypertension in patients with HIV infection treated with highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 1707-1714

4 **Panos G**, Farouk L, Stebbing J, Holmes P, Valero S, Randell P, Bower M, Gazzard B, Anderson M, Nelson M. Cryptogenic pseudocirrhosis: a new clinical syndrome of noncirrhotic portal hypertension (unassociated with advanced fibrosis) that can be detected by transient elastography in patients with HIV. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2009; **52**: 525-527

5 **Ingiliz P**, Valantin MA, Duvivier C, Medja F, Dominguez S, Charlotte F, Tubiana R, Poynard T, Katlama C, Lombès A, Benhamou Y. Liver damage underlying unexplained transaminase elevation in human immunodeficiency virus-1 mono-infected patients on antiretroviral therapy. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 436-442

6 **Crum-Cianflone N**, Dilay A, Collins G, Asher D, Campin R, Medina S, Goodman Z, Parker R, Lifson A, Capozza T, Bavaro M, Hale B, Hames C. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease among HIV-infected persons. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2009; **50**: 464-473

7 **Belloso WH**, Orellana LC, Grinsztejn B, Madero JS, La Rosa A, Veloso VG, Sanchez J, Ismerio Moreira R, Crabtree-Ramirez B, Garcia Messina O, Lasala MB, Peinado J, Losso MH. Analysis of serious non-AIDS events among HIV-infected adults at Latin American sites. *HIV Med* 2010; **11**: 554-564

8 **Garcia-Jardon M**, Bhat VG, Blanco-Blanco E, Stepian A. Postmortem findings in HIV/AIDS patients in a tertiary care hospital in rural South Africa. *Trop Doct* 2010; **40**: 81-84

9 **Kovari H**, Ledergerber B, Battegay M, Rauch A, Hirschel B, Foguena AK, Vernazza P, Bernasconi E, Mueller NJ, Weber R. Incidence and risk factors for chronic elevation of alanine aminotransferase levels in HIV-infected persons without hepatitis b or c virus co-infection. *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **50**: 502-511

10 **Crum-Cianflone N**, Collins G, Medina S, Asher D, Campin R, Bavaro M, Hale B, Hames C. Prevalence and factors associated with liver test abnormalities among human immunodeficiency virus-infected persons. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 183-191

11 **DallaPiazza M**, Amorosa VK, Localio R, Kostman JR, Lo Re V. Prevalence and risk factors for significant liver fibrosis among HIV-monoinfected patients. *BMC Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 116

12 **Prentice AM**. The emerging epidemic of obesity in developing countries. *Int J Epidemiol* 2006; **35**: 93-99

13 **Ocama P**, Castelnuovo B, Kamya MR, Kirk GD, Reynolds SJ, Kiragga A, Colebunders R, Thomas DL. Low frequency of liver enzyme elevation in HIV-infected patients attending a large urban treatment centre in Uganda. *Int J STD AIDS* 2010; **21**: 553-557

14 **Mata-Marín JA**, Gaytán-Martínez J, Grados-Chavarría BH, Fuentes-Allen JL, Arroyo-Anduiza CI, Alfaro-Mejía A. Correlation between HIV viral load and aminotransferases as liver damage markers in HIV infected naive patients: a concordance cross-sectional study. *Virol J* 2009; **6**: 181

15 **Zhang YX**, Gui XE, Zhong YH, Rong YP, Yan YJ. Cancer in cohort of HIV-infected population: prevalence and clinical characteristics. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2011; **137**: 609-614

16 **Guiguet M**, Boue F, Cadranel J, Lang JM, Rosenthal E, Costagliola D. Effect of immunodeficiency, HIV viral load, and antiretroviral therapy on the risk of individual malignancies (FHDH-ANRS CO4): a prospective cohort study. *Lancet Oncol* 2009; **10**: 1152-1159

17 **Crum-Cianflone NF**, Grandits G, Echols S, Ganesan A, Landrum M, Weintrob A, Barthel R, Agan B. Trends and causes of hospitalizations among HIV-infected persons during the late HAART era: what is the impact of CD4 counts and HAART use? *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2010; **54**: 248-257

18 **Cao YZ**, Dieterich D, Thomas PA, Huang YX, Mirabile M, Ho DD. Identification and quantitation of HIV-1 in the liver of patients with AIDS. *AIDS* 1992; **6**: 65-70

19 **Housset C**, Boucher O, Girard PM, Leibowitch J, Saimot AG, Bréchot C, Marche C. Immunohistochemical evidence for human immunodeficiency virus-1 infection of liver Kupffer cells. *Hum Pathol* 1990; **21**: 404-408

20 **Hufert FT**, Schmitz J, Schreiber M, Schmitz H, Rácz P, von Laer DD. Human Kupffer cells infected with HIV-1 in vivo. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 1993; **6**: 772-777

21 **Gendrault JL**, Steffan AM, Schmitt MP, Jaeck D, Aubertin AM, Kirn A. Interaction of cultured human Kupffer cells with HIV-infected CEM cells: an electron microscopic study. *Pathobiology* 1991; **59**: 223-226

22 **Schmitt MP**, Gendrault JL, Schweitzer C, Steffan AM, Beyer C, Royer C, Jaeck D, Pasquali JL, Kirn A, Aubertin AM. Permissivity of primary cultures of human Kupffer cells for HIV-1. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 1990; **6**: 987-991

23 **Steffan AM**, Lafon ME, Gendrault JL, Schweitzer C, Royer C, Jaeck D, Arnaud JP, Schmitt MP, Aubertin AM, Kirn A. Primary cultures of endothelial cells from the human liver sinusoid are permissive for human immunodeficiency virus type 1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1992; **89**: 1582-1586

24 **Cao YZ**, Friedman-Kien AE, Huang YX, Li XL, Mirabile M, Moudgil T, Zucker-Franklin D, Ho DD. CD4-independent, productive human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection

of hepatoma cell lines in vitro. *J Virol* 1990; **64**: 2553-2559
25 **Berger EA**, Murphy PM, Farber JM. Chemokine receptors as HIV-1 coreceptors: roles in viral entry, tropism, and disease. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1999; **17**: 657-700
26 **Fromentin R**, Tardif MR, Tremblay MJ. Human hepatoma cells transmit surface bound HIV-1 to CD4+ T cells through an ICAM-1/LFA-1-dependent mechanism. *Virology* 2010; **398**: 168-175
27 **Vlahakis SR**, Villasis-Keever A, Gomez TS, Bren GD, Paya CV. Human immunodeficiency virus-induced apoptosis of human hepatocytes via CXCR4. *J Infect Dis* 2003; **188**: 1455-1460
28 **Iser DM**, Avihingsanon A, Wisedopas N, Thompson AJ, Boyd A, Matthews GV, Locarnini SA, Slavin J, Desmond PV, Lewin SR. Increased intrahepatic apoptosis but reduced immune activation in HIV-HBV co-infected patients with advanced immunosuppression. *AIDS* 2011; **25**: 197-205
29 **Macias J**, Japón MA, Sáez C, Palacios RB, Mira JA, García-García JA, Merchante N, Vergara S, Lozano F, Gómez-Mateos J, Pineda JA. Increased hepatocyte fas expression and apoptosis in HIV and hepatitis C virus coinfection. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **192**: 1566-1576
30 **Tuyama AC**, Hong F, Saiman Y, Wang C, Ozkok D, Mosoian A, Chen P, Chen BK, Klotman ME, Bansal MB. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-1 infects human hepatic stellate cells and promotes collagen I and monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 expression: implications for the pathogenesis of HIV/hepatitis C virus-induced liver fibrosis. *Hepatology* 2010; **52**: 612-622
31 **Bruno R**, Galastri S, Sacchi P, Cima S, Caligiuri A, DeFranco R, Milani S, Gessani S, Fantuzzi L, Liotta F, Frosali F, Antonucci G, Pinzani M, Marra F. gp120 modulates the biology of human hepatic stellate cells: a link between HIV infection and liver fibrogenesis. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 513-520
32 **Brenchley JM**, Price DA, Schacker TW, Asher TE, Silvestri G, Rao S, Kazzaz Z, Bornstein E, Lambotte O, Altmann D, Blazar BR, Rodriguez B, Teixeira-Johnson L, Landay A, Martin JN, Hecht FM, Picker LJ, Lederman MM, Deeks SG, Douek DC. Microbial translocation is a cause of systemic immune activation in chronic HIV infection. *Nat Med* 2006; **12**: 1365-1371
33 **Schwabe RF**, Seki E, Brenner DA. Toll-like receptor signaling in the liver. *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 1886-1900
34 **Mathurin P**, Deng QG, Keshavarzian A, Choudhary S, Holmes EW, Tsukamoto H. Exacerbation of alcoholic liver injury by enteral endotoxin in rats. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 1008-1017
35 **Abu-Shanab A**, Quigley EM. The role of the gut microbiota in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **7**: 691-701
36 **Lanthier N**, Molendi-Coste O, Horsmans Y, van Rooijen N, Cani PD, Leclercq IA. Kupffer cell activation is a causal factor for hepatic insulin resistance. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2010; **298**: G107-G116
37 **Zhan YT**, An W. Roles of liver innate immune cells in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 4652-4660
38 **Dolganiuc A**, Norkina O, Kodys K, Catalano D, Bakis G, Marshall C, Mandrekar P, Szabo G. Viral and host factors induce macrophage activation and loss of toll-like receptor tolerance in chronic HCV infection. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 1627-1636
39 **Balagopal A**, Philp FH, Astemborski J, Block TM, Mehta A, Long R, Kirk GD, Mehta SH, Cox AL, Thomas DL, Ray SC. Human immunodeficiency virus-related microbial translocation and progression of hepatitis C. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 226-233
40 **Paik YH**, Schwabe RF, Bataller R, Russo MP, Jobin C, Brenner DA. Toll-like receptor 4 mediates inflammatory signaling by bacterial lipopolysaccharide in human hepatic stellate cells. *Hepatology* 2003; **37**: 1043-1055
41 **Tan AT**, Koh S, Goh W, Zhe HY, Gehring AJ, Lim SG, Bertoletti A. A longitudinal analysis of innate and adaptive immune profile during hepatic flares in chronic hepatitis B. *J Hepatol* 2010; **52**: 330-339
42 **Núñez M**. Hepatotoxicity of antiretrovirals: incidence, mechanisms and management. *J Hepatol* 2006; **44**: S132-S139
43 **Núñez M**. Clinical syndromes and consequences of antiretroviral-related hepatotoxicity. *Hepatology* 2010; **52**: 1143-1155
44 **Carr A**, Samaras K, Chisholm DJ, Cooper DA. Pathogenesis of HIV-1-protease inhibitor-associated peripheral lipodystrophy, hyperlipidaemia, and insulin resistance. *Lancet* 1998; **351**: 1881-1883
45 **Lemoine M**, Capeau J, Serfaty L. PPAR and Liver Injury in HIV-Infected Patients. *PPAR Res* 2009; **2009**: 906167
46 **Wahli W**, Braissant O, Desvergne B. Peroxisome proliferator activated receptors: transcriptional regulators of adipogenesis, lipid metabolism and more. *Chem Biol* 1995; **2**: 261-266
47 **Miyahara T**, Schrum L, Rippe R, Xiong S, Yee HF, Motomura K, Anania FA, Willson TM, Tsukamoto H. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors and hepatic stellate cell activation. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 35715-35722
48 **Auboeuf D**, Rieusset J, Fajas L, Vallier P, Frering V, Riou JP, Staels B, Auwerx J, Laville M, Vidal H. Tissue distribution and quantification of the expression of mRNAs of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors and liver X receptor-alpha in humans: no alteration in adipose tissue of obese and NIDDM patients. *Diabetes* 1997; **46**: 1319-1327
49 **Otake K**, Omoto S, Yamamoto T, Okuyama H, Okada H, Okada N, Kawai M, Saksena NK, Fujii YR. HIV-1 Nef protein in the nucleus influences adipogenesis as well as viral transcription through the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors. *AIDS* 2004; **18**: 189-198
50 **Shrivastav S**, Kino T, Cunningham T, Ichijo T, Schubert U, Heinklein P, Chrousos GP, Kopp JB. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-1 viral protein R suppresses transcriptional activity of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor {gamma} and inhibits adipocyte differentiation: implications for HIV-associated lipodystrophy. *Mol Endocrinol* 2008; **22**: 234-247
51 **Lemoine M**, Barbu V, Girard PM, Kim M, Bastard JP, Wendum D, Paye F, Housset C, Capeau J, Serfaty L. Altered hepatic expression of SREBP-1 and PPARgamma is associated with liver injury in insulin-resistant lipodystrophic HIV-infected patients. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 387-395
52 **Vispo E**, Moreno A, Maida I, Barreiro P, Cuevas A, Albertos S, Soriano V. Noncirrhotic portal hypertension in HIV-infected patients: unique clinical and pathological findings. *AIDS* 2010; **24**: 1171-1176
53 **Arey B**, Markov M, Ravi J, Prevette E, Batts K, Nadir A. Nodular regenerative hyperplasia of liver as a consequence of ART. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 1066-1068
54 **Bihl F**, Janssens F, Boehlen F, Rubbia-Brandt L, Hadengue A, Spahr L. Anticoagulant therapy for nodular regenerative hyperplasia in a HIV-infected patient. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2010; **10**: 6
55 **Mallet V**, Blanchard P, Verkarre V, Vallet-Pichard A, Fontaine H, Lascoux-Combe C, Pol S. Nodular regenerative hyperplasia is a new cause of chronic liver disease in HIV-infected patients. *AIDS* 2007; **21**: 187-192
56 **Schiano TD**, Kotler DP, Ferran E, Fiel MI. Hepatoportal sclerosis as a cause of noncirrhotic portal hypertension in patients with HIV. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 2536-2540
57 **Saifee S**, Joelson D, Braude J, Shrestha R, Johnson M, Sellers M, Galambos MR, Rubin RA. Noncirrhotic portal hypertension in patients with human immunodeficiency virus-1 infection. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 1167-1169
58 **Vispo E**, Maida I, Barreiro P, Moreno V, Soriano V. Upper gastrointestinal bleeding may unmask didanosine-associated portal hepatopathy in HIV/HCV co-infected patients. *HIV Clin Trials* 2008; **9**: 440-444
59 **Mendizabal M**, Craviotto S, Chen T, Silva MO, Reddy KR. Noncirrhotic portal hypertension: another cause of liver disease in HIV patients. *Ann Hepatol* 2009; **8**: 390-395
60 **Dinh MH**, Stosor V, Rao SM, Miller FH, Green RM. Cryptogenic liver disease in HIV-seropositive men. *HIV Med* 2009;

10: 447-453
61 **Tateo M**, Sebagh M, Bralet MP, Teicher E, Azoulay D, Mallet V, Pol S, Castaing D, Samuel D, Duclos-Vallée JC. A new indication for liver transplantation: nodular regenerative hyperplasia in human immunodeficiency virus-infected patients. *Liver Transpl* 2008; **14**: 1194-1198
62 **Ocama P**, Katwere M, Piloya T, Feld J, Opio KC, Kambugu A, Katabira E, Thomas D, Colebunders R, Ronald A. The spectrum of liver diseases in HIV infected individuals at an HIV treatment clinic in Kampala, Uganda. *Afr Health Sci* 2008; **8**: 8-12
63 **Feld JJ**, Ocama P, Ronald A. The liver in HIV in Africa. *Antivir Ther* 2005; **10**: 953-965
64 **Kochin I**, Magid M, Arnon R, Glasscock A, Kerkar N, Miloh T. Variceal bleeding in an adolescent with HIV diagnosed with hepatoportal sclerosis and nodular regenerative hyperplasia. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2010; **50**: 340-343
65 **Kovari H**, Ledergerber B, Peter U, Flepp M, Jost J, Schmid P, Calmy A, Mueller NJ, Muellhaupt B, Weber R. Association of noncirrhotic portal hypertension in HIV-infected persons and antiretroviral therapy with didanosine: a nested case-control study. *Clin Infect Dis* 2009; **49**: 626-635
66 **Reshamwala PA**, Kleiner DE, Heller T. Nodular regenerative hyperplasia: not all nodules are created equal. *Hepatology* 2006; **44**: 7-14
67 **Cesari M**, Schiavini M, Marchetti G, Caramma I, Ortu M, Franzetti F, Galli M, Antinori S, Milazzo L. Noncirrhotic portal hypertension in HIV-infected patients: a case control evaluation and review of the literature. *AIDS Patient Care STDS* 2010; **24**: 697-703
68 **Yarchoan R**, Mitsuya H, Thomas RV, Pluda JM, Hartman NR, Perno CF, Marczyk KS, Allain JP, Johns DG, Broder S. In vivo activity against HIV and favorable toxicity profile of 2',3'-dideoxyinosine. *Science* 1989; **245**: 412-415
69 **Chu KM**, Boulle AM, Ford N, Goemaere E, Asselman V, Van Cutsem G. Nevirapine-associated early hepatotoxicity: incidence, risk factors, and associated mortality in a primary care ART programme in South Africa. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e9183
70 **Coffie PA**, Tonwe-Gold B, Tanon AK, Amani-Bosse C, Bédikou G, Abrams EJ, Dabis F, Ekouevi DK. Incidence and risk factors of severe adverse events with nevirapine-based antiretroviral therapy in HIV-infected women. MTCT-Plus program, Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire. *BMC Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 188
71 **Mbougua JB**, Laurent C, Kouanfack C, Bourgeois A, Ciaffi L, Calmy A, Gwet H, Koulla-Shiro S, Ducos J, Mpoudi-Ngolé E, Molinari N, Delaporte E. Hepatotoxicity and effectiveness of a Nevirapine-based antiretroviral therapy in HIV-infected patients with or without viral hepatitis B or C infection in Cameroon. *BMC Public Health* 2010; **10**: 105
72 **Murphy RA**, Sunpath H, Kuritzkes DR, Venter F, Gandhi RT. Antiretroviral therapy-associated toxicities in the resource-poor world: the challenge of a limited formulary. *J Infect Dis* 2007; **196** Suppl 3: S449-S456
73 **Guaraldi G**, Squillace N, Stentarelli C, Orlando G, D'Amico R, Ligabue G, Fiocchi F, Zona S, Loria P, Esposito R, Palella F. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in HIV-infected patients referred to a metabolic clinic: prevalence, characteristics, and predictors. *Clin Infect Dis* 2008; **47**: 250-257
74 **Mohammed SS**, Aghdassi E, Salit IE, Avand G, Sherman M, Guindi M, Heathcote JE, Allard JP. HIV-positive patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease have a lower body mass index and are more physically active than HIV-negative patients. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2007; **45**: 432-438
75 **McGovern BH**, Ditelberg JS, Taylor LE, Gandhi RT, Christopoulos KA, Chapman S, Schwartzapfel B, Rindler E, Fiorino AM, Zaman MT, Sax PE, Graeme-Cook F, Hibberd PL. Hepatic steatosis is associated with fibrosis, nucleoside analogue use, and hepatitis C virus genotype 3 infection in HIV-seropositive patients. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **43**: 365-372
76 **Rodríguez-Torres M**, Govindarajan S, Solá R, Clumeck N, Lissen E, Pessôa M, Buggisch P, Main J, Depamphilis J, Dieterich DT. Hepatic steatosis in HIV/HCV co-infected patients: correlates, efficacy and outcomes of anti-HCV therapy: a paired liver biopsy study. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: 756-764
77 **Sulkowski MS**, Mehta SH, Torbenson M, Afdhal NH, Mirel L, Moore RD, Thomas DL. Hepatic steatosis and antiretroviral drug use among adults coinfected with HIV and hepatitis C virus. *AIDS* 2005; **19**: 585-592
78 **Blanco F**, Barreiro P, Ryan P, Vispo E, Martín-Carbonero L, Tuma P, Labarga P, Medrano J, González-Lahoz J, Soriano V. Risk factors for advanced liver fibrosis in HIV-infected individuals: role of antiretroviral drugs and insulin resistance. *J Viral Hepat* 2011; **18**: 11-16
79 **Tedla Z**, Nyirenda S, Peeler C, Agizew T, Sibanda T, Motsamai O, Vernon A, Wells CD, Samandari T. Isoniazid-associated hepatitis and antiretroviral drugs during tuberculosis prophylaxis in hiv-infected adults in Botswana. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2010; **182**: 278-285
80 **Yimer G**, Aderaye G, Amogne W, Makonnen E, Aklillu E, Lindquist L, Yamuah L, Feleke B, Aseffa A. Anti-tuberculosis therapy-induced hepatotoxicity among Ethiopian HIV-positive and negative patients. *PLoS One* 2008; **3**: e1809
81 **Weidle PJ**, Moore D, Mermin J, Buchacz K, Were W, Downing R, Kigozi A, Ndazima V, Peters P, Brooks JT. Liver enzymes improve over twenty-four months of first-line non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor-based therapy in rural Uganda. *AIDS Patient Care STDS* 2008; **22**: 787-795
82 **Stabinski L**, Reynolds S, Ocama P, Newell K, Ndyanabo A, Thomas D, Gray R, Wawer M, Quinn T, Kirk G. High prevalence of unexplained liver fibrosis associated with HIV in rural southwestern Uganda. Proceedings of the 17th Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections (CROI); 2010 Feb 16-19; San Francisco, USA. San Francisco, 2010: 689
83 **Alexandrino-de-Oliveira P**, Santos-Oliveira JR, Dorval ME, Da-Costa FC, Pereira GR, da Cunha RV, Paniago AM, Da-Cruz AM. HIV/AIDS-associated visceral leishmaniasis in patients from an endemic area in Central-west Brazil. *Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz* 2010; **105**: 692-697
84 **Bourgeois N**, Bastien P, Reynes J, Makinson A, Rouanet I, Lachaud L. 'Active chronic visceral leishmaniasis' in HIV-1-infected patients demonstrated by biological and clinical long-term follow-up of 10 patients. *HIV Med* 2010; **11**: 670-673
85 **Hung CC**, Ji DD, Sun HY, Lee YT, Hsu SY, Chang SY, Wu CH, Chan YH, Hsiao CF, Liu WC, Colebunders R. Increased risk for Entamoeba histolytica infection and invasive amebiasis in HIV seropositive men who have sex with men in Taiwan. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 2008; **2**: e175
86 **Price JC**, Thio CL. Liver disease in the HIV-infected individual. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 1002-1012
87 **Schneider M**, Norman R, Parry C, Bradshaw D, Plüddemann A. Estimating the burden of disease attributable to alcohol use in South Africa in 2000. *S Afr Med J* 2007; **97**: 664-672
88 **Friedrich-Rust M**, Ong MF, Martens S, Sarrazin C, Bojunga J, Zeuzem S, Herrmann E. Performance of transient elastography for the staging of liver fibrosis: a meta-analysis. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 960-974
89 **Calès P**, Halfon P, Batisse D, Carrat F, Perré P, Penaranda G, Guyader D, d'Alteroche L, Fouchard-Hubert I, Michelet C, Veillon P, Lambert J, Weiss L, Salmon D, Cacoub P. Comparison of liver fibrosis blood tests developed for HCV with new specific tests in HIV/HCV co-infection. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 238-244
90 **Merchante N**, Pérez-Camacho I, Mira JA, Rivero A, Macías J, Camacho A, Gómez-Mateos J, García-Lázaro M, Torre-Cisneros J, Pineda JA. Prevalence and risk factors for abnormal liver stiffness in HIV-infected patients without viral hepatitis coinfection: role of didanosine. *Antivir Ther* 2010; **15**: 753-763
91 **Moreno S**, García-Samaniego J, Moreno A, Ortega E, Pineda JA, del Romero J, Tural C, von Wichmann MA, Berenguer J, Castro A, Espacio R. Noninvasive diagnosis of liver fibrosis in patients with HIV infection and HCV/HBV co-infection. *J Viral Hepat* 2009; **16**: 249-258

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Li JY

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.99

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): 99-104
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Francesca Cainelli, MD, *Series Editor*

Hepatocellular carcinoma in developing countries: Prevention, diagnosis and treatment

Michael C Kew

Michael C Kew, Department of Medicine, University of Cape Town and Groote Schuur Hospital, Cape Town, Department of Medicine, University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, South Africa
Author contributions: Kew MC solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Dr. Michael C Kew, K Floor, Old Main Hospital Building, Groote Schuur Hospital, Main Road, Observatory 7935, Cape Town, South Africa. michael.kew@uct.ac.za
Telephone: +27-021-7822949 Fax: +27-021-4486815
Received: February 28, 2011 Revised: March 8, 2012
Accepted: March 17, 2012
Published online: March 27, 2012

Abstract

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) occurs commonly and with increasing frequency in developing countries, where it also carries an especially grave prognosis. The major risk factor for HCC in these regions is chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection, although dietary exposure to aflatoxin B1 also plays an important etiological role. Prevention of HCC in developing regions is unlikely in the foreseeable future. Although an effective vaccine against HBV is available, the percentage of babies born in developing countries that receive the full course of immunization remains low. Moreover, the usually long interval between infection with HBV and the development of HCC means that 30 to 50 years will elapse before the full effect of the vaccine will be realized. Practical measures to prevent aflatoxin B1 exposure are not in place. Serum α-fetoprotein levels are a useful pointer to the diagnosis of HCC in low-income countries, but definitive diagnosis is hampered both by the lack of the sophisticated imaging equipment now available in developed countries and by obstacles to obtaining histological proof. In the majority of patients in low-income regions, the tumor is inoperable by the time the patient presents. Hepatic resection is seldom possible in sub-Saharan Africa, although the tumor is successfully resected in a larger number of patients in China. Liver transplantation for HCC is rarely performed in either region. Sophisticated new radiotherapy techniques are not available in developing countries. The beneficial effects of the multikinase inhibitor, sorafenib, are encouraging, although financial considerations may restrict its use in low-income countries.

Key words: Hepatitis B virus infection; Aflatoxin B_1; α-fetoprotein; Hepatic resection; Hepatic transplantation; Sorafenib

Peer reviewer: Dr. María Angeles Pajares, PhD, Department of Metabolismo y Señalización Celular, Instituto de Investigaciones Biomedicas A. Sols (CSIC-UAM), Arturo Duperier 4, Madrid 28029, Spain

Kew MC. Hepatocellular carcinoma in developing countries: Prevention, diagnosis and treatment. *World J Hepatol* 2012; 4(3): 99-104 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v4/i3/99.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.99

INTRODUCTION

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the fifth most common human cancer, with approximately 750 000 new cases occurring worldwide each year[1]. Eighty percent of global HCCs occur in developing countries, and in these countries HCC is one of the three most common tumors. Eastern and south-eastern Asia (with the exception of Hong Kong, Japan, South Korea, Singapore, Taiwan and Macau) and almost all of sub-Saharan Africa are low-income regions with high incidences of the tumor[1].

HCC ranks third in annual global cancer mortality rates and has the shortest survival time of any cancer in

both males and females[2]. The prognosis is even poorer in patients in low-income countries. Among the reasons for the poor prognosis are the often advanced stage of the tumor when the patients are first seen and that optimal management of HCC requires resources that are seldom available in developing countries.

The reason for the high incidence of HCC in resource-poor countries is that two of the three major environmental causes of the tumor worldwide, namely, chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection and dietary exposure to the fungal toxin, aflatoxin B_1, occur far more often in these countries. Chronic HBV infection occurs in more than 8% (and in as many as 15%) of the population and, of those infected, one-quarter or more will develop the tumor[2]. The virus is responsible for 80% to 89% of HCCs in these regions, where HBV infection is almost always acquired in infancy or early childhood, as a result of either perinatal or horizontal transmission of the virus. Ninety percent of those infected in the first year of life, decreasing to 50% those infected in the fifth year and far fewer of those infected in the next few years, will become chronically infected with the virus and face a life-time relative risk of developing the tumor as high as 100%[3]. With chronic HBV infection being acquired predominantly in infancy or early childhood, the resultant HCC presents before or in mid-adulthood, the most productive years of life, causing a drain on productive capacity in addition to a substantial burden on the healthcare system. The reasons for the poorer prognosis of HCC in low-income countries are the generally longer interval before the patients receive medical attention and hence the more advanced stage of the tumor at the time of diagnosis, the fewer doctors and the scarcity and inferior quality of the diagnostic facilities available, and the limited treatment that can be offered. In addition, financial and logistical constraints in resource-poor regions compromise attempts to prevent the tumor.

Aflatoxins are difuranocoumarin derivatives of Aspergillus flavus and A.parasiticus. These fungi contaminate crops, particularly maize, ground nuts and fermented soy beans, in tropical and sub-tropical countries with warm, humid climates and, more especially, in subsistence farming communities in these countries. Contamination occurs both during growth of the crops and as a result of their improper storage. Sub-Saharan Africa and the Asia-Pacific region have high levels of exposure to the fungal toxin. Aflatoxin B_1 (AFB_1) is the aflatoxin most often found in contaminated human foodstuffs and is the most potent hepatocarcinogen[4]. The hepatocarcinogenic effects of AFB_1 and HBV are synergistic, with a multiplicative relative risk for HCC development[5].

With few exceptions, chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) and HCV-induced HCC are significantly less common in developing than in developed countries. One exception is Somalia, where chronic HCV infection is as common as chronic HBV infection[6].

In most rural regions of China, the population drinks primarily pond, ditch or river water. High concentrations of tumor-promoting microcystins, derived from blue-green algae, have been identified in these waters and high microcystin contents correlate with a high incidence of HCC[7,8].

PREVENTION

Because of the high incidence, inadequate treatment and graver prognosis of HCC in low-income countries, prevention of the tumor is an urgent priority in these countries.

Prevention of hepatitis B virus-induced hepatocellular carcinoma

An effective and safe vaccine against HBV has been available for a number of years. Based on data in 2008, HBV vaccine was included in the expanded Program of Immunization in 177 countries and an estimated 69% of the birth cohort that year received 3 doses of the vaccine[9]. Unfortunately, the percentage of babies born in resource-poor countries that receive the full course of immunization is far lower that that in developed countries. In sub-Saharan African countries, between 10% (in Chad) and 99% (in The Gambia) of babies receive the full course of the vaccine[10]. In 12 countries, less than 70% of infants receive the full course[10]. The coverage is even worse in the Asia-Pacific region.

In Taiwan (not a low-income country), where immunization of babies against HBV began in 1984 and universal coverage was achieved by 1986, coverage of all preschool children by 1987 and extension to older children and adults by 1990, the vaccination program has already resulted, in the age groups that have been immunized, in a decrease from 90 to 15% in the number of infected babies born to highly infectious carrier mothers and a ten-fold or more decrease in the rate of chronic HBV carriage in these babies, as well as in those infected slightly later by horizontal infection[11]. The prevalence of HCC among recipients of the vaccine has already decreased by 70% in comparison with those in the non-vaccinated age groups[12]. After adjustment for age and sex, the relative risk for HCC was 0.31 among children aged 6 to 19 years in the vaccinated cohort, compared with similar aged children in unvaccinated cohorts[11]. These encouraging results give promise that the universal incorporation of a full program of HBV vaccination into the Expanded Program of Immunization in developing countries in which HBV infection is endemic will, in the future, prevent thousands of deaths from cirrhosis and HCC and that HBV-induced HCC could ultimately be completely prevented.

In the early years after immunization was introduced, some cases of chronic HBV infection and HCC were still seen in Taiwanese children and adolescents who had received a full course of the vaccine. This led to the realization of the importance of administering hyperimmune γ-globulin (HBIG) at the time of birth (in spite of its high cost) in addition to the first dose of the vaccine

to babies born to highly infectious (HBeAg-positive) carrier mothers. Addition of HBIG to the vaccine schedule has resulted in a further reduction in the occurrence of chronic HBV infection and HBV-induced HCC[11]. Regrettably, the high cost of HBIG will have important implications in low-income countries. In the few individuals still developing "break-through" infections and tumors in Taiwan, failure to complete the full course of the vaccination program has been shown to be responsible[11].

Because of the usually long interval between infection with HBV and the development of HCC, it will take 30 to 50 years for the full effect of the vaccine on the incidence of HBV-induced HCC to be realized in these countries. In the interim, the incidence of HBV-induced HCC continues to increase.

Prevention of aflatoxin B_1-induced hepatocellular carcinoma

Contamination of staple foodstuffs by AFB_1 does not occur in high-income countries because those food stuffs that might be infected are screened for their aflatoxin content by governmental agencies and do not enter the commercial market if unacceptably high levels are found. In low-income countries, regulations to control dietary exposure to AFB_1 are either non-existent or unenforceable in practice. Contaminated crops are consumed by the subsistence farmer's family, neighbors, friends and relatives, and are sold locally or regionally without ever coming under the scrutiny of a governmental agency. It is estimated that about 45 million of the world's population are exposed to aflatoxins.

Because contamination by Aspergillus species takes place both during growth of the crops and as a result of their improper storage, attempts at primary prevention must be directed at minimizing both sources of fungal contamination[4,13-15]. One possible intervention is to alter the agricultural practices in regions of high dietary AFB_1 intake by replacing crops that are highly susceptible to fungal contamination with others at lower risk. This approach has been successfully used in one limited study in China when a change to a rice-based diet resulted in an appreciable decrease in AFB_1 intake[13,14]. However, for most communities in resource-poor countries, a change in agricultural practices leading to a change in diet is not feasible. Because damaged plants are more susceptible to fungal contamination, relatively simple and inexpensive pre-harvest prevention could be achieved by adequate irrigation and spraying of the crops with fungicides[13-15]. A study confirming the effectiveness of combating post-harvest contamination by simple interventions such as sun-drying the crops on cloth rather than the earth, hand sorting to remove mouldy crops, and better storage practices has been reported[15]. For such interventions to be successful on a wide scale in resource-poor countries will require training of the farmers in practical ways to prevent contamination of susceptible crops and the provision of appropriate storage facilities[15].

Prevention of hepatitis C virus-induced hepatocellular carcinoma

Despite considerable research over many years into the development of a vaccine against HCV, there appears to be little likelihood that a vaccine will become available in the near future. In both developed and developing countries, attempts at prevention of HCV infection (which also apply to HBV infection) should include encouraging the avoidance of the high risk behaviors of illicit drug injection and promiscuous sexual activity, insisting on the use of needles and syringes on a single occasion only, or if this is not possible, careful sterilization before their reuse, and on sterilization of surgical instruments[16]. Equally important is encouraging the screening of donated blood for the presence of these viruses[16].

Despite recent advances in treating patients with chronic HCV infection with anti-viral drugs, the overall impact of therapy is small because the majority of individuals chronically infected with the virus are unaware that they are infected. The high cost of the anti-viral agents is an additional impediment in developing countries. Efforts to prevent infection should include identifying persons at increased risk of HCV infection and providing them with appropriate counseling.

Prevention of microcistin-induced hepatocellular carcinoma

Since 1973, the Chinese government has been urging the rural population to drink deep-well water[17]. This has resulted, for example in Qidong county, in 80% of the population now drinking deep-well water compared with only 20% in earlier years. However, the effect of this intervention on the occurrence of HCC has yet to be published.

DIAGNOSIS

Because of the higher incidence of HCC in developing countries, medical practitioners in these countries are more likely than those in low incidence regions to be mindful of this tumor. Moreover, history taking and physical examination can be performed equally well in resource-poor as in resource-rich regions and, in all but the most impoverished or remote regions, the least expensive of organ imaging techniques, ultrasonography, may be available. It should therefore be possible in low-income countries to make a provisional diagnosis of HCC or, at least, to include the tumor in the differential diagnosis. Moreover, the diagnostic laboratories should be able to measure the serum α-fetoprotein (AFP) concentration. The serum AFP concentration is particularly useful in the diagnosis of HCC in low-income regions[18,19]. The level is raised in 90% of sub-Saharan black Africans with HCC and in 75% of the patients it is raised to a level higher than that which may be present in benign hepatic diseases (usually given as greater than 400 or 500 ng/mL)[18,19]. In Chinese patients, approximately 75% have a raised serum

AFP level, with about 50% having a level above 400 ng/mL[20,21]. In contrast, the value is raised in only approximately 55% of patients in developed countries[22].

Definitive diagnosis of HCC depends upon either histological examination of the hepatic mass or the finding with a dynamic imaging technique of one or more mass-lesions in the liver showing a typical vascular profile in the form of early arterial phase enhancement, followed by washout with loss of the enhancement. Micro-bubble contrast ultrasonography, three-dimensional contrast-enhanced computerized spiral tomography or magnetic resonance imaging enhanced with gadolinium or gadoxetic acid will not be available in the rural areas and may not even be available in the cities of resource-poor countries.

In developing countries, fewer medical (or para-medical) practitioners than their counterparts in high-income countries are trained to perform percutaneous liver biopsies. Moreover, it is necessary to send the biopsy material to a central diagnostic laboratory to have the histological examination performed. In practice therefore, particularly in rural regions of developing countries, the tumor is often diagnosed on the basis of the clinical features and either a raised serum AFP concentration or, less often, the finding of a mass-lesion on ultrasonography of the liver, without obtaining histological confirmation. Furthermore, because of the poor results of treating HCC and dismal prognosis of the patients in developing countries, many medical practitioners, particularly those in the rural areas, develop a nihilistic attitude to definitive diagnosis and treatment of the tumor and the patient is often sent home to die on the basis of a provisional diagnosis only.

HCC is frequently diagnosed only when the tumor has reached an advanced stage. This applies in all geographical regions but more so in developing countries. A further difficulty in resource-poor countries is the insufficient number of hospital beds available.

In all geographical regions, HCC commonly co-exists with cirrhosis[23]. However, the effect of the associated disease on the diagnosis of the tumor differs between developed and developing regions. In the former, HCC often presents as a complication of long-standing symptomatic cirrhosis and the patient may have few, if any, symptoms attributable to the tumor, whereas in the latter, the presence of cirrhosis is typically overshadowed by the symptoms and signs of the tumor[23].

Although HCC generally presents clinically in a sufficiently characteristic way to allow the presence of the tumor to be suspected by an experienced clinician, it may manifest in any of a number of unusual ways, at least some of which occur more commonly in patients in developing countries. Unusual presentations of HCC may result from a number of complications of the tumor, such as tumor rupture causing an acute hemoperiteum, Budd-Chiari syndrome and inferior venal caval obstruction from invasion of the hepatic venous system and inferior vena cava by the tumor, and obstructive jaundice from spread of the tumor into the biliary tree. Atypical presentations may also result from paraneoplastic manifestations of the tumor, the more common of which are hypoglycemia, polycythemia, and hypercalcemia[24]. A physical sign that is a useful pointer to the diagnosis of HCC but is often missed is the presence of a hepatic arterial bruit. The systolic bruit, which is heard in as many as 27% of patients with HCC[25], is focal and its detection requires thorough auscultation over the liver.

The finding of an elevated right hemidiaphragm (or rarely left hemidiaphragm) on chest X-ray is a useful pointer to the presence of HCC in developing countries[26], provided that an amebic liver abscess, another common space-occupying hepatic lesion in these countries and one that can present clinically in a manner not dissimilar to HCC, can be excluded. Multiple pulmonary metastases are often evident in patients with HCC in resource-poor regions at the time of first admission[26,27] and this finding in association with a pathologically raised right hemidiaphragm on chest X-ray is virtually diagnostic of HCC.

Serum markers of HCC, reactivity of AFP with Lens culinaris agglutinin (AFP-L3), des-γ-carboxy prothrombin and α -fucosidase, have not proved to be more useful than AFP as indicators of HCC in resource-poor countries.

The use of a 6-month surveillance program consisting of a physical examination, measurement of the serum AFP level and ultrasonographic examination of the liver aimed at the early detection of HCC is beyond the means of resource-poor countries, even if the ultrasonographic facilities are available.

TREATMENT

The first decision that needs to be taken when a definitive diagnosis of HCC has been made is whether or not the tumor is resectable.

Hepatic resection

Unfortunately, in resource - poor regions, HCC is very often inoperable at the time the diagnosis is made. Apart from the advanced stage of the tumor resulting from the difficulty and delay in obtaining medical advice, in many patients in these regions, HCC runs a particularly fulminant course and has reached an advanced stage by the time the patient seeks medical attention. Little information has been published on the rate of growth of the tumor in these patients, but in one study, based on serial estimations of serum AFP levels in black African patients, the doubling time of HCC was estimated to be as short as 10 d[28]. This time contrasts with an average tumor doubling time as long as 136 d in patients in resource-rich countries[29,30].

Even in those patients in developing countries in which the tumor runs a less rapid course and who come under medical attention timeously, early detection may be difficult. Because of the large size of the liver, the tumor must grow to an appreciable size before it can be felt or before it invades adjacent structures. Moreover, the considerable functional reserves of the liver ensure that jaundice and other evidence of hepatic dysfunction appear only when a

large part of the organ has been replaced by tumor.

Only 8% of Ugandan[31] and 1% of rural southern African black patients[32] were found to have resectable tumors, at a time that resectability rates of up to 37% were being recorded in some western countries with low or intermediate incidences of HCC[33] and up to 20% in Japanese patients[34]. These resection rates have not changed significantly in sub-Saharan Africa in more recent times, whereas resectability rates in industrialized countries are now appreciably higher. However, hepatic resections have been performed more often in some of the larger hospitals in China.

Further evidence for the advanced stage of HCC when patients from developing countries first present is the often large size of a single tumor or the extent of the tumor burden when more than one tumor mass is present in the liver. This too has important implications when considering the operability of the tumor. The average weight of the cancerous liver at necropsy in African black patients with HCC ranges in different studies from 3045 to 3914 grams (with a largest size of 8780 grams) (the average weight of a normal liver in an adult black male is 1750 grams)[35-37]. This contrasts with average weights of 2036 grams in Japanese[38], 2615 grams in North American[36] and 2477 grams in South African Caucasian patients[35-37]. The tumors are generally even larger in non-cirrhotic livers (average weights of the tumorous liver in Ugandan patients without cirrhosis is 4134 grams compared with 2768 grams in those with cirrhosis[38]) and the same is true in southern African blacks (3918 and 3085 grams, respectively)[35]. Multiple tumor masses throughout the liver, irrespective of their size, obviously preclude hepatic resection. Moreover, resection of one or a few small tumor masses may be precluded by its or their position in the liver.

Another reason for the low resectabilty rates of HCC when patients from resource-poor countries are first seen is the frequency with which the tumor has already spread beyond the liver. For example, 19% of southern African blacks with HCC have radiologically-evident pulmonary metastases at this time[26,27] (compared, for instance, with 7% in patients in the United Kingdom[22]). Moreover, in a further 27% of these patients, pulmonary metastases too small to have been seen radiologically during life were present at necropsy, performed on average only 6 wk later[26].

Cirrhosis is present in about 70% of patients with HCC in developing countries (although in some regions of sub-Saharan Africa it is present less often than in patients in other parts of the world) and this too greatly influences the decision whether or not surgical resection will be possible. The resulting liver dysfunction may make surviving the operation impossible or unlikely. In addition, the presence of cirrhosis precludes post-operative regeneration of the remaining liver tissue. In all populations, the requirements for hepatic resection in a patient in whom HCC has arisen in a cirrhotic liver are that the serum bilirubin level should be normal, significant portal hypertension and esophageal varices should be absent, and the platelet count should be above 100 000/mm[39].

Careful follow-up of patients from all regions after successful surgical resection of HCC is mandatory because of the high recurrence rate of the tumor, which may be as high as 50% at 3 years and 70% at 5 years[39]. Apart from incomplete resection of the original tumor, the reasons for HCC recurrence are that new tumor foci develop subsequently because the cause of the malignant transformation is still present in the remaining liver tissue. In addition, the possibility exists that malignant cells in the circulation, increased in number by the handling of the tumorous liver during the operation[40,41], may seed the liver post-operatively. Tumors caused by chronic HBV infection are often multifocal and small tumors missed at the time of the original surgery may become clinically evident at any time thereafter. Those patients in whom the tumor has been resected but who are still actively infected with HBV or HCV must be treated with appropriate anti-viral drugs with the aim of curing the infection or, if this is not possible in the case of HBV, of seroconverting HBV e antigen-positive patients to an anti-HB e-positive status and keeping the viral loads at as low a level as can be achieved.

Hepatic transplantation

With the generally far advanced stage of HCC at the time that patients in resource-poor countries seek medical attention, very few meet the criteria required for liver transplantation (no spread of the tumor beyond the liver, a single tumor less than 5 cm in diameter or fewer than three tumor masses, each less than 3 cm in diameter and no macrovascular invasion (Milan criteria)[26]). Few, if any, hepatic transplants have been performed for the treatment of HCC in developing countries.

Other treatments

In patients with inoperable HCC, improved results are now being obtained with the use of 3-dimensional high-dose photon beam radiotherapy and stereotactic radiotherapy. However, the sophisticated equipment necessary for these therapies are not available in resource-poor countries. Similarly, forms of local treatment or palliation of HCC, such as radio-frequency ablation, ablation with alcohol or trans-arterial chemoembolization, which are available in high-income countries, require equipment and expertise that are unlikely to be available in low-income countries.

For those patients in whom surgery or palliation cannot be performed, drug therapy needs to be considered. Up until recently, no form of chemotherapy has been found to be effective in the treatment of HCC[42]. The reasons for the poor results are the late presentation with very large tumor burdens and perhaps the frequency of multi-drug resistance genes. However, recent studies have shown the beneficial effects on survival time of the oral multikinase inhibitor, sorafenib. Trials with this and other multikinase inhibitors have and are being conducted in a number of centers in different parts of the world but, as

far as I am aware, no results have yet been published in patients in resource-poor countries. In addition, the cost of the drug may be an important issue in low-income countries.

REFERENCES

1 **Ferlay J**, Shin HR, Bray F, Forman D, Mathers C, Parkin DM. Establishment of world-wide burden of cancer in 2008: GLOBCAN 2008. *Int J Cancer* 2010; **127**: 2893-2917
2 **Kew MC**. Epidemiology of chronic hepatitis B virus infection, hepatocellular carcinoma, and hepatitis B virus-induced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Pathol Biol (Paris)* 2010; **58**: 273-277
3 **Beasely RP**, Hwang LY, Lin CC, Chien CS. Hepatocellular carcinoma and HBV: a prospective study of 22,000 men in Taiwan. *Lancet* 1981; **22**: 1129-1133
4 **Wild CP**, Gong YY. Mycotoxins and human disease: a largely ignored global health issue. *Carcinogenesis* 2010; **31**: 71-82
5 **Kew MC**. Synergistic interaction between aflatoxin B1 and hepatitis B virus in hepatocarcinogenesis. *Liver Int* 2003; **23**: 405-409
6 **Bile K**, Aden C, Norder H, Magnius L, Lindberg G, Nilsson Z. Important role of hepatitis C virus infection as a cause of chronic liver disease in Somalia. *Scand J Dig Dis* 1993; **25**: 559-564
7 **Yu SZ**, Chen G. Blue-green algae toxins and liver cancer. *China J Cancer Res* 1994; 6: 9-17
8 **Zhou TL**, Yu SZ. Laboratory study on the relationship between drinking water andhepatoma. Quantitative evaluation using GGT method. *Zhonghua Yu Fang Yi Xue Za Zhi* 1990; **234**: 203-205
9 WHO/IVB 2008 database accessed Sept 4, 2009. Available from URL: http://www.who.int/immunization_momitoring/data/year_vaccineintroduction.xis
10 WHO/UNICEF estimates. Available from URL: http://www.who.int/immunizationmonitoring/en/globalsummary/countryprofileselerct.cfm
11 **Chang MH**, You SL, Chen CJ, Liu CJ, Lee CM, Lin SM, Chu HC, Wu TC, Yang SS, Kuo HS, Chen DS. Decreased incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in hepatitis B vaccinees: a 20-year follow-up study. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2009; **101**: 1348-1355
12 **Chang MH**, Chen TH, Hsu HM, Wu TC, Kong MS, Liang DC, Ni YH, Chen CJ, Chen DS. Prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma by universal vaccination against hepatitis B virus: the effect and problems. *Clin Cancer Res* 2005; **11**: 7953-7957
13 **Kew M**, François G, Lavanchy D, Margolis H, Van Damme P, Grob P, Hallauer J, Shouval D, Leroux-Roels G, Meheus A. Prevention of hepatitis C virus infection. *J Viral Hepat* 2004; **11**: 198-205
14 **Turner PC**, Sylla A, Gong YY, Diallo MS, Sutcliffe AE, Hall AJ, Wild CP. Reduction in exposure to carcinogenic aflatoxins by post harvest intervention measures in west Africa: a community-based intervention study. *Lancet* 2005; **365**: 1950-1956
15 **Sudakin DL**. Dietary aflatoxin exposure and chemoprevention of cancer: a clinical review. *J Toxicol Clin Toxicol* 2003; **41**: 195-204
16 **Kensler TW**, Qian GS, Chen JG, Groopman JD. Translational strategies for cancer prevention in liver. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2003; **3**: 321-329
17 **Yu SZ**. Primary prevention of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1995; **10**: 674-682
18 **Alpert E**. Human α1-fetoprotein. In Hepatocellular Carcinoma. Okuda K, Peters RL, editors. New York: Wiley, 1976: 353-359
19 **Kew MC**. Tumour markers of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1989; **4**: 373-384
20 **Tsai JF**, Chang WY, Jeng JE, Ho MS, Lin ZY, Tsai JH. Frequency of raised alpha-fetoprotein level among Chinese patients with hepatocellular carcinoma related to hepatitis B and C. *Br J Cancer* 1994; **69**: 1157-1159
21 **Johnson PJ**. Role of alpha-fetoprotein in the diagnosis and management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1999; **14** Suppl: S32-S36
22 **Kew MC**, Dos Santos HA, Sherlock S. Diagnosis of primary cancer of the liver. *Br Med J* 1971; **4**: 408-411
23 **Kew MC**, Popper H. Relationship between hepatocellular carcinoma and cirrhosis. *Semin Liver Dis* 1984; **4**: 136-146
24 **Kew MC**. Unusual clinical manifestations of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Adv Haematol Oncol* 2005; **3**: 577-583
25 **Clain D**, Wartnaby K, Sherlock S. Abdominal arterial bruits in liver disease. *Lancet* 1966; 2: 516-519
26 **Levy JI**, Geddes EW, Kew MC. The chest radiograph in primary liver cancer. *S Afr Med J* 1976; **50**: 1323-1326
27 **Sanders CF**. The plain chest radiograph in 75 cases of primary carcinoma of the liver. *Clin Radiol* 1968; 19: 341-346
28 **Purves LR**. α-fetoprotein and the diagnosis of liver cell cancer. In: Liver Cell cancer. Cameron CM, Linsell DA, Warwick GP, editors. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1976: 61-79
29 **Ebara M**, Ohto M, Shinagawa T, Sugiura N, Kimura K, Matsutani S, Morita M, Saisho H, Tsuchiya Y, Okuda K. Natural history of minute hepatocellular carcinoma smaller than three centimeters complicating cirrhosis. A study in 22 patients. *Gastroenterology* 1986; **90**: 289-298
30 **Okazaki N**, Yoshino M, Yoshida T, Suyzuki M, Moriyama N, Takayasu K, Makuuchi M, Yamazeki S, Hasegawa H, Noguchi M. Evaluation of the prognosis of small hepatocellular carcinoma based on tumor volume doubling time. *Cancer* 1989; **63**: 2207-2210
31 **Harrison NW**, Dhru D, Primack A, Bhana D, Kyalwazi SK. The surgical management of primary hepatocellular carcinoma in Uganda. *Br J Surg* 1973; **60**: 565-569
32 **Maraj R**, Kew MC, Hyslop RJ. Resectability rate of hepatocellular carcinoma in rural southern Africans. *Br J Surg* 1988; **75**: 335-338
33 **Foster JH**, Berman MM. Solid liver tumors. *Major Probl Clin Surg* 1977; **22**: 1-342
34 **Okuda K**, Ohsuki T, Obata H, Tomimatsu M, Okazaki N, Hasegawa H, Nakojima Y, Onishin K. Natural history of hepatocellular carcinoma and relation to treatment. *Cancer* 1985; **56**: 918-928
35 **Kew MC**, Paterson AC. Unusual clinical presentations of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Trop Gastroenterol* 1985; **6**: 10-22
36 **Steiner PE**. Cancer of the liver and cirrhosis in Trans-Saharan Africa and the United States of America. *Cancer* 1960; **13**: 1085-1166
37 **Davies JNP**. Cancer of the Liver in Trans-Saharan Africa. UICC Monographs, No. 1. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1961
38 **Okuda K**. Clinical presentation and natural history of hepatocellular carcinoma and other liver cancers. In: Liver Cancer. Okuda K, Tabor E, editors. New York: Churchill Livingstone, 1997: 1-12
39 **Mendizabal M**, Reddy KR. Current management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Med Clin North Am* 2009; **93**: 885-900, viii
40 **Imamura H**, Matsuyama Y, Tanaka E, Ohkuba T, Hasegawa K, Miya gawa S, Sugamura Y, Minagawa M, Takayama T, Kawasaki S, Makuuchi M. Risk factors contributing to early and late phase intrahepatic recurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma after hepatectomy. *J Hepatol* 2003; **38**: 200-207
41 **Ijichi M**, Takayama T, Matsumura M, Shiratori Y, Omata M, Makuuchi M. alpha-Fetoprotein mRNA in the circulation as a predictor of postsurgical recurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma: a prospective study. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 853-860
42 **Llovet JM**, Bruix J. Molecular targeted therapies in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 1312-1327

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Wu X

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.105

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): 105-109
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

BRIEF ARTICLE

Relationship between interleukin 18 polymorphisms and susceptibility to chronic hepatitis B virus infection

Na Li, Yu-Feng Gao, Tian-Chen Zhang, Ping Chen, Xu Li, Fei Su

Na Li, Ping Chen, Xu Li, Fei Su, Department of Infectious Diseases, the First Affiliated Hospital of Anhui Medical University, Hefei 230032, Anhui Province, China
Yu-Feng Gao, Department Of Hepatopathy, the Second Affiliated Hospital of Anhui Medical University, Hefei 230601, Anhui Province, China
Tian-Chen Zhang, Department of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, School of Public Health, Anhui Medical University, Hefei 230032, Anhui Province, China
Author contributions: Li N and Gao YF contributed equally to this work; Zhang TC did the data analysis; Li N and Gao YF wrote the manuscript; Li N, Chen P, Li X and Su F performed the majority of experiments; Su F and Gao YF designed the study.
Supported by the Grants from the National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 81072342; and the Foundation of Pre-973 Program Projects, No. 2009CB526411
Correspondence to: Fei Su, Professor, Department of Infectious Diseases, the First Affiliated Hospital of Anhui Medical University, 218 Jixi Road, Hefei 230032, Anhui Province, China. sufei7782@yahoo.com
Telephone: +86-551-2922907 Fax: +86-551-2922907
Received: October 18, 2011 Revised: February 29, 2012
Accepted: March 17, 2012
Published online: March 27, 2012

Abstract

AIM: To identify the relationship between the tagging single nucleotide polymorphism sites (tagSNPs) of the Interleukin-18 (IL-18) gene and genetic susceptibility to chronic hepatitis B virus infection in Chinese patients.

METHODS: Five hundred and one cases of chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection and 301 HBV natural clearance controls were studied. Two tagSNPs in the IL-18 gene (rs1946518A/C and rs574424C/G) were genotyped by the Multiplex Snapshot technique. The genotype and allele frequencies were calculated and analyzed.

RESULTS: In the genotypes of rs1946518, the AA type was present at a higher frequency in the patients compared to those in the controls. Odds ratio (OR) of the AA genotype for the comparison with that of the AC and the CC genotype was 1.537 (95% confidence intervals (CI): 1.116-2.218, $P = 0.009 < 0.025$). In phenotypes, the allele C at rs1946518 was of a significantly lower frequency in the patients with chronic hepatitis B than that in the controls ($P = 0.017 < 0.025$). OR of the allele A for the comparison with that of the allele C was 1.279 (95% CI: 1.045-1.567). As for the rs574424 genotypes, no significant difference in this genotype distribution or in this allele frequency between the patients and the control subjects was observed. No significant difference in the haplotype frequencies between the patients with chronic hepatitis B and HBV natural clearance individuals was displayed.

CONCLUSION: The data suggest that genotype AA and the allele A of the IL-18 at position rs1946518 are closely associated with the resistance to chronic hepatitis B and may be the dangerous gene. However, no statistical association was found between polymorphisms of rs574424 for IL-18 and hepatitis B.

Key words: Hepatitis B virus; Interleukin 18; tagSNP; Genetic susceptibility

Peer reviewers: Dr. Nattiya Hirankarn, Department of Microbiology, Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University, Chulalongkorn University, Rama 4 Road, Bangkok 10330, Thailand; Ali Sazci, Professor, Department of Medical Biology and Genetics, Faculty of Medicine, University of Kocaeli, Umuttepe, Kocaeli 41380, Turkey; Dr. Waka Ohishi, Department of Clinical Studies, Radiation Effects Research Foundation, 5-2 Hijiyama Park, Minami-ku, Hiroshima 732-0815, Japan

Li N, Gao YF, Zhang TC, Chen P, Li X, Su F. Relationship between interleukin 18 polymorphisms and susceptibility to chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *World J Hepatol* 2012; 4(3): 105-109 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v4/i3/105.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v4.i3.105

INTRODUCTION

The outcome of HBV infection is mainly influenced by the virus, immune response and genetic diversity[1-3]. The clinical course of chronic hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection varies from spontaneous recovery after acute hepatitis to a chronic persistent infection that may progress to chronic hepatitis B virus carrier, chronic hepatitis B, cirrhosis or hepatocellular carcinoma. Many studies strongly support the role of host genetic components in determining the outcome of HBV infection[4-6]. Genetic susceptibility of HBV infection is considered to be determined at different functional levels, such as cytokine production, antigen presentation and receptor recognition, and the single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) of cytokine genes involved in the immune response after HBV infection become the emphasis of gene susceptibility, which may highlight the genetic background of HBV infection[7].

Interleukin-18 (IL-18), which was first described as an interferon-γ (IFN-γ) producing factor, has multiple functions, including the activation of cytotoxic T lymphocytes, natural killer cells and the promotion of T-helper type 1 (Th1) immune responses[8]. IL-18 leads to activities against pathogens, activates effector cells involved in the cellular interactions that occur during inflammation, is part of the acute and chronic stages of viral hepatitis and induces target-cell apoptosis. Migita *et al*[9] reported that a strong virus-specific CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocyte response to hepatitis B virus was associated with IL-18's production decided by the IL-18 gene.

IL-18 gene polymorphisms have been reported to be implicated in susceptibility to chronic hepatitis B, in its pathogenesis[10] or in disease evolvement[11]. Many SNPs in the IL-18 gene region were predicted to be involved in clearing hepatitis B virus, such as -607C/A and -137G/C in the IL-18 promoter regions[9], 148G/C[12] and 105A/C[13] in regulatory gene sequences, and so on. Even although the role of the IL-18 polymorphism in the outcome of HBV infection has been examined in many different nations, no firm conclusion has been reached for the Chinese Han population. The purpose of this report was to investigate the association between the tagSNPs of the IL-18 gene and the genetic susceptibility to HBV infection.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients

Eight hundred and two irrelevant Han Chinese with HBV infection were enrolled in this study. They were recruited with their informed consent for genetic analysis. They had no abnormalities, based on physical examination, chest radiography, electrocardiogram, urinalysis and routine laboratory blood testing. Liver, renal, endocrine and cardiovascular disorders were excluded. Five hundred and one were chronic HBV infection patients (221 males and 280 females). The remaining 301 were HBV natural clearance individuals and served as the control group (143 females and 158 males). The average age was 44.2 years for HBV chronic carriers and 44.9 years for controls. All patients with chronic HBV infection fulfilled the diagnostic criteria of the Proposal of Prevention and Treatment of Viral Hepatitis, 2005, issued by the Chinese Society of Infectious Diseases and Parasitology and the Chinese Society of Hepatology of the Chinese Medical Association[14]. Clinical criteria of self-limiting HBV infection patients were positive for HBsAb and HbcAb but negative for HBsAg, plus without a history of HBV vaccination. Controls were age and sex-matched subjects with cases ($P > 0.1$). All cases and controls were followed for more than 6 mo. No anti-HBV therapy had been given to the patients.

Isolation of DNA from whole blood

Genomic DNA was isolated from whole blood of all the subjects, using phenol/chloroform with MaXtract high-density tubes. Genomic DNA was extracted from the peripheral blood leucocytes pellet using a DNA extraction kit (Yuan Ping-Hao Biotechnology Co., Ltd. Tianjin, China), according to the manufacturer's instructions. The DNA samples were stored at -80 °C with a concentration of 100 ng/μL.

tag SNP selection

We selected SNPs on the basis of the following principal criteria: tag SNPs (tagSNP) were identified using genotype data from the panel (Han Chinese in Beijing) of the phase II HapMap Project. The criteria for tagSNPs were $r^2 > 0.8$, minor allele frequency MAF > 0.1, functional relevance and importance, and SNPs significantly associated with diseases in previous studies. A total of two tagSNPs in IL-18 gene (rs1946518A/C and rs574424C/G, $r^2 = 0.981$) were selected, which captured 100% of common SNPs (minor allele frequency > 0.1) in the HapMap Chinese database at $r^2 > 0.8$.

Determination of the IL-18 genotypes

The two SNPs of IL-18 were genotyped using the Multiplex Snapshot technique. The primers and probes used were (5'to3'): for the rs1946518: forward primer: 5'-CCCTCTCCCCAAGCTTACTTTC-3', reverse primer: 5'-CCCCTTCCTCCCAAGCTCAATA-3', and extended primer: 5'-TTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTCTGTTGCAGAAAGTGTAAAAATTATTA-3'; and those for the rs5744247: forward primer: 5'-CACCCTGCCTGTACCCTCAGAT-3', reverse primer: 5'-CACCTGAGGATGCCATAAACACA-3', and extended primer: 5'-TTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTCGTGCCCTTTAGGAAGGACT-3'.

The PCR amplification conditions were: a 15-μL final volume containing 10 μL × 1.5 μL buffer, 0.3 μL dNTPs (10 mmol/L), 0.9 μL $MgCl_2$ (25 mmol/L), 0.1 μL HotstarR Taq DNA polymerase, 0.5 μL each primer (10 pmol/L) and 1μL DNA template (20 mg/L). Conditions for the multiplex PCR reaction using touch-down PCR response procedures included initial denaturation at 95 °C for 15 min, denaturation at 94 °C for 40 s, annealing at 63 °C for 1 min, and recursive-descent 0.5 °C, followed

Table 1 Comparison of IL-18 gene promoter polymorphism between patients with chronic hepatitis B and controls

Position	Polymorphism	Control n = 301 (%)	Patient n = 501 (%)	χ^2	P value	OR (95% CI)
rs1946518	AA	60 (0.199)	141 (0.281)	6.742	0.009	1.573 (1.116-2.218)
	AC	156 (0.518)	239 (0.477)	1.279	0.258	0.848 (0.637-1.129)
	CC	85 (0.269)	121 (0.242)	1.437	0.200	0.809 (0.585-1.119)
	A	276 (0.279)	521 (0.619)	10.84	0.017	1.279 (1.045-1.567)
	C	326 (0.622)	481 (0.381)			
rs574424	CC	127 (0.422)	198 (0.395)	0.557	0.456	0.895 (0.670-1.197)
	GC	134 (0.445)	232 (0.463)	0.243	0.622	1.075 (0.806-1.433)
	GG	40 (0.133)	71 (0.142)	0.123	0.751	1.070 (0.705-1.623)
	C	388 (0.645)	628 (0.627)	0.512	0.475	0.926 (0.750-1.149)
	G	214 (0.355)	374 (0.373)			

by extension at 72 °C for 1.5 min for a total of 15 cycles. This was followed by 25 cycles of denaturation at 94 °C for 40 s, annealing at 56 °C for 40 s, extension at 72 °C for 1.5 min, with a final extension at 72 °C for 8 min. Amplified samples were stored at 4 °C. After amplification, 1.5 μL PCR product was examined on an agarose gel to test for successful amplification.

SNaPshot reaction: Take the purified PCR product, each concentration of 0.2 μmol/L SnaPshot primer mixture, SNaPshot fluorescent mixtures (containing Ampli Taq DNA polymerase and different fluorescently labeled ddNTP) consisting of an PCR reaction system. SNaPshot response procedures: (1) initial denaturation at 96 °C for 10 s; (2) denaturation at 96 °C for 10 s; (3) annealing at 53 °C for 5 s; (4) extension at 60 °C for 30 s; and (5) for a total of 25 cycles. Finally, keep extension at 60 °C for 30 s. Amplified samples were stored at 4 °C. SNaPshot PCR products using SAP purification in 10 μL the SNaPshot PCR product with 1 U SAP or 1 U CIP, mixed, insulated at 37 °C for 1 h, 75 ℃ for 15 min to inactivate the enzyme. The samples can be stored at 4 °C for 24 h or -20 °C for long term.

DNA sequencing: The Snapshot product was diluted 20-fold. In a total volume of 10 μL, we mixed 8.6 μL HiDiFormamide (high-purity formamide), 0.9 μL GeneScan-120 LIZ Size Standard and 0.5 μL Snapshot purification product. Samples were incubated at 95 °C for 5 min, chilled quickly for 4 min and then loaded on an ABI 3730XL DNA sequence detector for capillary electrophoresis, running GeneMapper4.0 software analysis of experimental results.

Statistical analyses

Allele and genotype frequencies were obtained by direct counting and the χ^2 test was used to compare allele and genotype distributions. We assessed the quality of the genotype data by testing for Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium in the case and control samples using Fisher's exact test ($P > 0.05$). We adjusted the significant threshold to $P < 0.05/2 = 0.025$ after Bonferroni's correction. Odds ratio (OR) and 95% confidence intervals (CI) were calculated according to Woolf's method.

RESULTS

Polymorphisms at the position rs1946518 and rs574424 in the IL-18 gene were analyzed by SNaPSHOT reaction. In every polymorphic site, a common reverse primer and two sequence-specific forward primers were used and two SNaPSHOT reactions were performed for every individual DNA. In total, 802 Chinese subjects were studied for IL-18 polymorphisms. All the genotypes of IL-18 gene polymorphisms were in Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium in both the case and control subjects. As shown in Table 1, there were AA, AC and CC genotypes at position rs1946518, and CC, GC and GG genotypes at position rs574424.

Genotype and allele frequencies for IL-18 polymorphisms are summarized in Table 1. The genotype frequencies were in agreement with the Hardy-Weinberg ($P > 0.05$ for all analyses). As the rs1946518 genotypes, of 501 patients with chronic hepatitis B, 141 had the AA type (28.1%), 239 the AC type (47.7%) and 121 the CC type (24.2%). Of the 301 control subjects, 60 had the AA type (19.9%), 156 the AC type (51.8%) and 85 the CC (28.2%). In genotypes, the AA type at position rs1946518 was present at a higher frequency in patients with chronic hepatitis B compared to those in the controls. OR of the AA genotype for the comparison with that of the AC and the CC genotype was 1.573 (95% CI: 1.116-2.218, $P = 0.009 < 0.025$). In phenotypes, the allele C at rs1946518 was of a significantly lower frequency in patients with chronic hepatitis B than that in the controls ($\chi^2 = 10.84$, $P = 0.017 < 0.025$). As for the rs574424 genotypes, 198 of the 301 patients with chronic hepatitis B had the CC type (39.5%), 232 the GC type (46.3%) and 71 the GG type (14.2%). 127 of the 301 control subjects were type CC (42.2%), 134 were GC (44.5%) and 40 were CC (13.3%). No significant difference in the genotype distribution or in the allele frequency between the patients with chronic hepatitis B and the control subjects was observed.

Haplotype analysis

We also estimated the IL-18 haplotype frequencies and evaluated the association among these variants and HBV infection. We observed three haplotype combinations, but non-significant association was found in the distribu-

Table 2 Haplotype frequencies of two interleukin-18 bi-allelic polymorphisms in chronic hepatitis B and healthy controls

Haplotypes	rs1946518	rs574424	Controls (%)	Patients (%)	χ^2	*P* value
Ⅰ	A	C	62 (10.3)	147 (14.7)	2.02	0.155
Ⅱ	A	G	214 (35.5)	374 (37.3)	0.511	0.475
Ⅲ	C	C	326 (54.2)	481 (48.0)	2.623	0.101

tion of the haplotype frequencies between cases and controls ($P > 0.025$). Haplotype frequency less than 0.03 will be ignored in analysis (Table 2).

Three haplotypes of the IL-18 at position rs1946518 and rs574424 were present in both patients and controls (haplotypes Ⅰ, Ⅱ and Ⅲ in Table 2). The frequencies of haplotype I, Ⅱ and Ⅲ in the controls were 10.3%, 35.5% and 54.2%, respectively. The frequencies of haplotype Ⅰ, Ⅱ and Ⅲ in the patients with chronic hepatitis B were 14.7%, 37.3% and 48.0% respectively. The frequencies of haplotype Ⅰ and Ⅱ, which bear A at rs1946518, in the patients were little higher than that in the healthy control subjects, but no significant difference in the haplotype frequencies between the patients and HBV natural clearance individuals was displayed.

DISCUSSION

The human IL-18 gene is located on chromosome 11q22.2-q22.3 and is composed of six exons and five introns[15]. Sugiura *et al*[16]described that there were some SNPs at position -607C/A, -137G/C, -656G/T and 105A/C within IL-18 gene exons. Cloning and gene expression analysis showed that the SNPs of the promoter of IL-18 gene at position -607 and -137 were suggested to cause the differences in transcription factor binding and have a critical impact on IL-18 gene activity and potentially also to IFN-gamma[17]. Further studies showed that the people with allele C at position -137 in the promoter of IL-18 gene may be protected against HBV infection; moreover, AA genotype at position -607 may be closely linked to inhibiting HBV-DNA replication. Meanwhile, haplotype frequencies' distributions suggested that the frequencies of -607C/-137C and -607A/-137C haplotypes in the chronic hepatitis B groups were significantly lower than that in normal controls[18]. But a recent study found that the polymorphisms at position -148, +8925 and +13925 could play a main role in the expression of IL-18 and had a clear correlation between IL-18 and IFN-gamma mRNA expression[19]. Because IFN-gamma, mainly mediated by IL-18, could limit the hepatitis B virus by activating the immune cells, high levels of expression of IL-18 caused by the above genotypes might explain the mechanism of viral clearance in HBV infection. But not all studies had the same view and with scientific and technological progress, the susceptibility genes in IL-18 will be discovered more and more.

To identify the relationship between the SNPs of IL-18 gene and genetic susceptibility to chronic hepatitis B virus infection in Chinese patients, we selected two SNPs in IL-18 (rs1946518and rs574424) using genotype data from the panel (Han Chinese in Beijing) of the phase II HapMap Project. The two tagSNPs captured 100% of common SNPs (minor allele frequency > 0.1) in the HapMap Chinese database at $r^2 = 0.981$. We analyzed the associations of the two SNP alleles with HBV-infected patients compared to spontaneously cleared HBV controls.

In the present study, we found that the allele frequencies of rs1946518A in the chronic hepatitis B group were markedly higher than those in the control group and there was a significant correlation between them (Table 1). These findings suggest that rs1946518 (A > C) is closely associated with the susceptibility to chronic hepatitis B and may be the susceptible gene. We analyzed the rs574424C/G genotype in a series of patients with chronic hepatitis B and acute hepatitis B and it was not associated with HBV infection. But Zhang[18] confirmed that rs574424C alleles were associated with the clearance of HBV infection and protected people against chronic hepatitis B. Those conclusions were rather contradictory. It is likely that the contrary results may be related to the size of samples or the criteria of inclusion.

With regard to the haplotypes, Giedraitis V[20] found that patients with acute hepatitis B carrying haplotype of rs1946518A/ rs187238C had a more vigorous CD8+ T cell response to HBV core than patients not carrying rs1946518A/rs187238C, suggesting that rs1946518A/ rs187238C was associated with a self-limited course of HBV infection. Unfortunately, no haplotype (rs1946518A/574424C or G) was detected to have association with HBV infection in our study. The reason for different results is likely due to different gene, races and sample sizes.

The results of the present study suggest that the genotypes rs1946518AA (OR = 1.573) and the allele A (OR = 1.279) are closely associated with chronic hepatitis B and may be the dangerous gene. IL-18 gene is an important factor that determines the outcome of HBV infection, which will give some new clues in the study of the pathogenesis of chronic hepatitis B. In fact, responses to HBV infection and HBV antigens (vaccines) and treatment are connected with genetic traits. Such correlations are still not clear, especially with regard to different populations, age and course of disease. These investigations should be continued, especially in patients treated with interferon, still the most important means of treatment. This could be useful in typing patients for this very expensive therapy.

COMMENTS

Background

Persistent hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection is considered a multifactorial and polygenic disorder with viral, environmental and genetic components, as well as contribu-

tions from HBV genomic variability, host age, gender, concurrent infection with the hepatitis C virus, hepatitis D virus and human immune deficiency virus. Interleukin-18 (IL-18) plays an important role in the response of the innate immune system to viral infection. High levels of expression of IL-18 caused by the above genotypes might affect induction of IFN-γ expression.

Research frontiers

This study is the first to investigate the association between two tagSNPs (rs1946518/ rs574424) of IL-18 and the genetic susceptibility to chronic HBV infection in Chinese patients using the Multiplex Snapshot technique.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The genotype AA and the allele A of the IL-18 at position rs1946518 are closely associated with the susceptibility to chronic hepatitis B and may be the dangerous gene. But the tagSNPs of IL-18 at rs574424 position are not associated with HBV infection in Chinese patients.

Applications

Based on the results of our study, further genetic studies are needed to examine the roles of other IL-18 SNPs and their association with disease progress in chronic HBV infection.

Terminology

The human IL-18 gene is located on chromosome 11q22.2-q22.3 and is composed of six exons and five introns. Interleukin-18 (IL-18) was first described as an interferon-g (IFN-g)–producing factor and has multiple functions, including the activation of cytotoxic T lymphocytes or natural killer cells and the promotion of T-helper type 1 (Th1)-type immune responses, which limits virus infection.

Peer review

This manuscript investigates the association between 2 SNPs claimed to be TaqSNP for common haplotype in the Chinese population and chronic hepatitis B. It is well written and interesting.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We would like to thank Li X, who is the dean of the First Affiliated Hospital of Anhui Medical University, for providing the financial support.

REFERENCES

1 **Luo KX**. Hepatitis B: Basic biology and clinical science. 2nd ed. Beijing: People's Medical Publishing House, 2001: 56-70
2 **Chu CJ**, Lok AS. Clinical significance of hepatitis B virus genotypes. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 1274-1276
3 **Thursz M**. Genetic susceptibility in chronic viral hepatitis. *Antiviral Res* 2001; **52**: 113-116
4 **Frodsham AJ**. Host genetics and the outcome of hepatitis B viral infection. *Transpl Immunol* 2005; **14**: 183-186
5 **Lin TM**, Chen CJ, Wu MM, Yang CS, Chen JS, Lin CC, Kwang TY, Hsu ST, Lin SY, Hsu LC. Hepatitis B virus markers in Chinese twins. *Anticancer Res* 1989; **9**: 737-741
6 **Ramezani A**, Hasanjani Roshan MR, Kalantar E, Eslamifar A, Banifazl M, Taeb J, Aghakhani A, Gachkar L, Velayati AA. Association of human leukocyte antigen polymorphism with outcomes of hepatitis B virus infection. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **23**: 1716-1721
7 **Ben-Ari Z**, Mor E, Papo O, Kfir B, Sulkes J, Tambur AR, Tur-Kaspa R, Klein T. Cytokine gene polymorphisms in patients infected with hepatitis B virus. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 144-150
8 **Okamura H**, Tsutsi H, Komatsu T, Yutsudo M, Hakura A, Tanimoto T, Torigoe K, Okura T, Nukada Y, Hattori K. Cloning of a new cytokine that induces IFN-gamma production by T cells. *Nature* 1995; **378**: 88-91
9 **Sun Y**, Chen HY, Xin SJ. Effect of IL-18 on peripheral blood mononuclear cells of chronic hepatitis B and hepatitis B virus DNA released by HepG2.2.15 cell lines. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2004; **3**: 230-234
10 **Szkaradkiewicz A**, Jopek A, Wysocki J. Effects of IL-12 and IL-18 on HBcAg-specific cytokine production by CD4 T lymphocytes of children with chronic hepatitis B infection. *Antiviral Res* 2005; **66**: 23-27
11 **Migita K**, Sawakami-Kobayashi K, Maeda Y, Nakao K, Kondoh S, Sugiura M, Kawasumi R, Segawa O, Tajima H, Machida M, Nakamura M, Yano K, Abiru S, Kawasaki E, Yatsuhashi H, Eguchi K, Ishibashi H. Interleukin-18 promoter polymorphisms and the disease progression of Hepatitis B virus-related liver disease. *Transl Res* 2009; **153**: 91-96
12 **Kim YS**, Cheong JY, Cho SW, Lee KM, Hwang JC, Oh B, Kimm K, Lee JA, Park BL, Cheong HS, Shin HD, Kim JH. A functional SNP of the Interleukin-18 gene is associated with the presence of hepatocellular carcinoma in hepatitis B virus-infected patients. *Dig Dis Sci* 2009; **54**: 2722-2728
13 **Higa S**, Hirano T, Mayumi M, Hiraoka M, Ohshima Y, Nambu M, Yamaguchi E, Hizawa N, Kondo N, Matsui E, Katada Y, Miyatake A, Kawase I, Tanaka T. Association between interleukin-18 gene polymorphism 105A/C and asthma. *Clin Exp Allergy* 2003; **33**: 1097-1102
14 **Chinese Society of Hepatology;** Chinese Medical Association; Chinese Society of Infectious Diseases; Chinese Medical Association. [The guidelines of prevention and treatment for chronic hepatitis B]. *Zhonghua Gan Zang Bing Za Zhi* 2005; **13**: 881-891
15 **Kruse S**, Kuehr J, Moseler M, Kopp MV, Kurz T, Deichmann KA, Foster PS, Mattes J. Polymorphisms in the IL 18 gene are associated with specific sensitization to common allergens and allergic rhinitis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2003; **111**: 117-122
16 **Sugiura T**, Kawaguchi Y, Harigai M, Terajima-Ichida H, Kitamura Y, Furuya T, Ichikawa N, Kotake S, Tanaka M, Hara M, Kamatani N. Association between adult-onset Still's disease and interleukin-18 gene polymorphisms. *Genes Immun* 2002; **3**: 394-399
17 **Ludwiczek O**, Kaser A, Novick D, Dinarello CA, Rubinstein M, Vogel W, Tilg H. Plasma levels of interleukin-18 and interleukin-18 binding protein are elevated in patients with chronic liver disease. *J Clin Immunol* 2002; **22**: 331-337
18 **Zhang PA**, Wu JM, Li Y, Yang XS. Association of polymorphisms of interleukin-18 gene promoter region with chronic hepatitis B in Chinese Han population. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 1594-1598
19 **Cheong JY**, Cho SW, Oh B, Kimm K, Lee KM, Shin SJ, Lee JA, Park BL, Cheong HS, Shin HD, Cho BY, Kim JH. Association of interleukin-18 gene polymorphisms with hepatitis B virus clearance. *Dig Dis Sci* 2010; **55**: 1113-1119
20 **Giedraitis V**, He B, Huang WX, Hillert J. Cloning and mutation analysis of the human IL-18 promoter: a possible role of polymorphisms in expression regulation. *J Neuroimmunol* 2001; **112**: 146-152

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Wu X

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): I
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

Acknowledgments to reviewers of *World Journal of Hepatology*

Many reviewers have contributed their expertise and time to the peer review, a critical process to ensure the quality of *World Journal of Hepatology*. The editors and authors of the articles submitted to the journal are grateful to the following reviewers for evaluating the articles (including those published in this issue and those rejected for this issue) during the last editing time period.

Yasemin Hatice Balaban, Professor, Hacettepe University, 06570 Ankara, Turkey

Dr. Henning Gronbaek, cal Department V, Aarhus University Hospital, Norrebrogade 44, Aarhus 8000, Denmark

Dr. Nattiya Hirankarn, Department of Microbiology, Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University, Chulalongkorn University, Rama 4 Road, Bangkok 10330, Thailand

Canhua Huang, Professor, The State Key Lab of Biotherapy, Sichuan University, Chengdu 610041, Sichuan Province, China

Dr. Andrea Mancuso, Epatologia e Gastro-enterologia, AO Ospedale Niguarda Cà Granda, Piazza Ospedale Maggiore 3, 20162 Milano, Italy

Dr. Waka Ohishi, Department of Clinical Studies, Radiation Effects Research Foundation, 5-2 Hijiyama Park, Minami-ku, Hiroshima 732-0815, Japan

Dr. María Angeles Pajares, PhD, Department of Metabolismo y Señalización Celular, Instituto de Investigaciones Biomedicas A. Sols (CSIC-UAM), Arturo Duperier 4, Madrid 28029, Spain

Krishnan Rajeshwari, Professor, Department of Pediatrics, Maulana Azad Medical College, New Delhi 110002, India

Ali Sazci, Professor, Department of Medical Biology and Genetics, Faculty of Medicine, University of Kocaeli, Umuttepe, Kocaeli 41380, Turkey

Frank Tacke, Professor, Department of Medicine III, University Hospital Aachen, Pauwelsstr 30, Aachen 52074, Germany

Dr. Takuji Tanaka, Professor, Director, The Tohkai Cytopathology Institute-Cancer Research and Prevention, 5-1-2, Minami-Uzura, Gifu City 500-8285, Japan

Pierluigi Toniutto, Professor, Medical Liver Transplant Unit, Internal Medicine, University of Udine, Piazzale SM della Misericordia 1, 33100 Udine, Italy

Dr. Hongzhi Xu, Massachusetts General Hospital, 51 Blossom Street, Room 435, Boston, MA 02148, United States

Dr. Lang Zhuo, Department of Cell and Tissue Engineering, Institute of Bioengineering and Nanotechnology, 31 Biopolis Way, The Nanos 04-16, Singapore 138669, Singapore

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): I
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

Events Calendar 2012

January 18, 2012
AHPBA Sponsored Consensus Conference on the Multidisciplinary Treatment of Colorectal Cancer Liver Metastases
San Francisco, CA, United States

January 20-21, 2012
AGA Clinical Congress of Gastroenterology and Hepatology: Practice, Evidence and Quality in 2012
Miami, FL, United States

January 27-28, 2012
28th Annual Meeting of the German Association for the Study of the Liver
Hamburg, Germany

January 30-31, 2012
5th International Conference on the Management of Patients with Viral Hepatitis
Paris, France

February 8-10, 2012
Stockholm Liver Week 2012
Stockholm, Sweden

February 16-19, 2012
22nd Conference of the Asian Pacific Association for the Study of the Liver
Taipei, Taiwan, China

March 16 -17, 2012
Hepatitis Single Topic Conference
Atlanta, GA, United States

March 16-17, 2012
ESGE - Workshop on Advanced Endoscopy with Live Demonstrations
Vienna, Austria

March 31-April 1, 2012
27th Annual New Treatments in Chronic Liver Disease
San Diego, CA, United States

April 18-22, 2012
The International Liver Congress by EASL
Barcelona, Spain

April 27-28, 2012
The European Society for Paediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition
Stockholm, Sweden

May 16-19, 2012
International Liver Transplant Society 18th Annual International Congress 2012
San Francisco, CA, United States

May 19-22, 2012
Digestive Disease Week 2012
San Diego, CA, United States

June 22-23, 2012
EASL Monothematic Conference: Vascular Liver Diseases
Tallin, Estonia

July 1-5, 2012
10th World Congress of the International Hepato-Pancreato-Biliary Association 2012
Paris, France

September 5-8, 2012
International Congress of Pediatric Hepatology, Gastroenterology and Nutrition
Sharm El-Sheikh, Egypt

September 7-9, 2012
Viral Hepatitis Congress 2012
Macclesfield, United Kingdom

September 7-9, 2012
The Viral Hepatitis Congress
Frankfurt, Germany

September 14-16, 2012
The International Liver Cancer Association's 6th Annual Conference
Berlin, Germany

September 20-22, 2012
Prague Hepatology Meeting 2012
Prague, Czech Republic

September 20-22, 2012
1st World Congress on Controversies in the Management of Viral Hepatitis
Prague, Czech Republic

October 18-20, 2012
2nd World Congress on Controversies in the Management of Viral Hepatitis
Berlin, Germany

November 9-13, 2012
AASLD - The Liver Meeting 2012
Boston, MA, United States

November 9-13, 2012
The Liver Meeting - 63rd Annual Meeting and Postgraduate Course of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases
Boston, MA, United States

November 14-18, 2012
4th World Congress of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition
Taipei, Taiwan, China

December 26-28, 2012
International Conference on Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition
Bangkok, Thailand

World Journal of Hepatology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office
wjh@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com

World J Hepatol 2012 March 27; 4(3): I-V
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Hepatology (*World J Hepatol, WJH*, online ISSN 1948-5182, DOI: 10.4254), is a monthly, open access (OA), peer-reviewed journal supported by an editorial board of 573 experts in hepatology from 46 countries.

The biggest advantage of the OA model is that it provides free, full-text articles in PDF and other formats for experts and the public without registration, which eliminates the obstacle that traditional journals possess and usually delays the speed of the propagation and communication of scientific research results.

Maximization of personal benefits

The role of academic journals is to exhibit the scientific levels of a country, a university, a center, a department, and even a scientist, and build an important bridge for communication between scientists and the public. As we all know, the significance of the publication of scientific articles lies not only in disseminating and communicating innovative scientific achievements and academic views, as well as promoting the application of scientific achievements, but also in formally recognizing the "priority" and "copyright" of innovative achievements published, as well as evaluating research performance and academic levels. So, to realize these desired attributes of *WJH* and create a well-recognized journal, the following four types of personal benefits should be maximized. The maximization of personal benefits refers to the pursuit of the maximum personal benefits in a well-considered optimal manner without violation of the laws, ethical rules and the benefits of others. (1) Maximization of the benefits of editorial board members: The primary task of editorial board members is to give a peer review of an unpublished scientific article via online office system to evaluate its innovativeness, scientific and practical values and determine whether it should be published or not. During peer review, editorial board members can also obtain cutting-edge information in that field at first hand. As leaders in their field, they have priority to be invited to write articles and publish commentary articles. We will put peer reviewers' names and affiliations along with the article they reviewed in the journal to acknowledge their contribution; (2) Maximization of the benefits of authors: Since *WJH* is an open-access journal, readers around the world can immediately download and read, free of charge, high-quality, peer-reviewed articles from *WJH* official website, thereby realizing the goals and significance of the communication between authors and peers as well as public reading; (3) Maximization of the benefits of readers: Readers can read or use, free of charge, high-quality peer-reviewed articles without any limits, and cite the arguments, viewpoints, concepts, theories, methods, results, conclusion or facts and data of pertinent literature so as to validate the innovativeness, scientific and practical values of their own research achievements, thus ensuring that their articles have novel arguments or viewpoints, solid evidence and correct conclusion; and (4) Maximization of the benefits of employees: It is an iron law that a first-class journal is unable to exist without first-class editors, and only first-class editors can create a first-class academic journal. We insist on strengthening our team cultivation and construction so that every employee, in an open, fair and transparent environment, could contribute their wisdom to edit and publish high-quality articles, thereby realizing the maximization of the personal benefits of editorial board members, authors and readers, and yielding the greatest social and economic benefits.

Aims and scope

The major task of *WJH* is to rapidly report the most recent results in basic and clinical research on hepatology, specifically including autoimmune, cholestatic and biliary disease, cirrhosis and its complications, liver biology/pathobiology, liver failure, growth , liver failure/cirrhosis/portal hypertension, liver fibrosis, hepatitis B and C virus infection, hepatocellular carcinoma, biliary tract disease, transplantation, genetics, epidemiology, microbiology and inflammatory disorders, molecular and cell biology, nutrition, geriatric hepatology, pediatric hepatology, steatohepatitis and metabolic liver disease, diagnosis and screening, endoscopy, imaging and advanced technology.

Columns

The columns in the issues of *WJH* will include: (1) Editorial: To introduce and comment on major advances and developments in the field; (2) Frontier: To review representative achievements, comment on the state of current research, and propose directions for future research; (3) Topic Highlight: This column consists of three formats, including (A) 10 invited review articles on a hot topic, (B) a commentary on common issues of this hot topic, and (C) a commentary on the 10 individual articles; (4) Observation: To update the development of old and new questions, highlight unsolved problems, and provide strategies on how to solve the questions; (5) Guidelines for Basic Research: To provide guidelines for basic research; (6) Guidelines for Clinical Practice: To provide guidelines for clinical diagnosis and treatment; (7) Review: To review systemically progress and unresolved problems in the field, comment on the state of current research, and make suggestions for future work; (8) Original Article: To report innovative and original findings in hepatology; (9) Brief Article: To briefly report the novel and innovative findings in hepatology; (10) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (11) Letters to the Editor: To discuss and make reply to the contributions published in *WJH*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (12) Book Reviews: To introduce and comment on quality monographs of hepatology; and (13) Guidelines: To introduce consensuses and guidelines reached by international and national academic authorities worldwide on basic research and clinical practice in hepatology.

Name of journal

World Journal of Hepatology

ISSN

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

Editor-in-chief

Editorial office

World Journal of Hepatology
Editorial Department: Room 903, Building D,
Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu,

Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381892
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjh@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

Indexed and abstracted in
PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifer, and Directory of Open Access Journals.

Published by
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

Biostatistical editing
Statisital review is performed after peer review. We invite an expert in Biomedical Statistics from to evaluate the statistical method used in the paper, including *t*-test (group or paired comparisons), chi-squared test, Ridit, probit, logit, regression (linear, curvilinear, or stepwise), correlation, analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, *etc*. The reviewing points include: (1) Statistical methods should be described when they are used to verify the results; (2) Whether the statistical techniques are suitable or correct; (3) Only homogeneous data can be averaged. Standard deviations are preferred to standard errors. Give the number of observations and subjects (*n*). Losses in observations, such as drop-outs from the study should be reported; (4) Values such as ED50, LD50, IC50 should have their 95% confidence limits calculated and compared by weighted probit analysis (Bliss and Finney); and (5) The word 'significantly' should be replaced by its synonyms (if it indicates extent) or the *P* value (if it indicates statistical significance).

Conflict-of-interest statement
In the interests of transparency and to help reviewers assess any potential bias, *WJH* requires authors of all papers to declare any competing commercial, personal, political, intellectual, or religious interestsin relation to the submitted work. Referees are also asked to indicate any potential conflict they might have reviewing a particular paper. Before submitting, authors are suggested to read "Uniform Requirements for Manuscripts Submitted to Biomedical Journals: Ethical Considerations in the Conduct and Reporting of Research: Conflicts of Interest" from International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE), which is available at: http://www.icmje.org/ethical_4conflicts.html.

Sample wording: [Name of individual] has received fees for serving as a speaker, a consultant and an advisory board member for [names of organizations], and has received research funding from [names of organization]. [Name of individual] is an employee of [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns stocks and shares in [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns patent [patent identification and brief description].

Statement of informed consent
Manuscripts should contain a statement to the effect that all human studies have been reviewed by the appropriate ethics committee or it should be stated clearly in the text that all persons gave their informed consent prior to their inclusion in the study. Details that might disclose the identity of the subjects under study should be omitted. Authors should also draw attention to the Code of Ethics of the World Medical Association (Declaration of Helsinki, 1964, as revised in 2004).

Statement of human and animal rights
When reporting the results from experiments, authors should follow the highest standards and the trial should comform to Good Clinical Practice (for example, US Food and Drug Administration Good Clinical Practice in FDA-Regulated Clinical Trials; UK Medicines Research Council Guidelines for Good Clinical Practice in Clinical Trials) and/or the World Medical Association Declaration of Helsinki. Generally, we suggest authors follow the lead investigator's national standard. If doubt exists whether the research was conducted in accordance with the above standards, the authors must explain the rationale for their approach and demonstrate that the institutional review body explicitly approved the doubtful aspects of the study.

Before submitting, authors should make their study approved by the relevant research ethics committee or institutional review board. If human participants were involved, manuscripts must be accompanied by a statement that the experiments were undertaken with the understanding and appropriate informed consent of each. Any personal item or information will not be published without explicit consents from the involved patients. If experimental animals were used, the materials and methods (experimental procedures) section must clearly indicate that appropriate measures were taken to minimize pain or discomfort, and details of animal care should be provided.

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Bo ok Antiqua with ample margins. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the publisher are responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without the written permission of both the authors and the publisher. We reserve the right to copy-edit and put onto our website accepted manuscripts. Authors should follow the relevant guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee. For the sake of transparency in regard to the performance and reporting of clinical trials, we endorse the policy of the International Committee of Medical Journal Editors to refuse to publish papers on clinical trial results if the trial was not recorded in a publicly-accessible registry at its outset. The only register now available, to our knowledge, is http://www. clinicaltrials.gov sponsored by the United States National Library of Medicine and we encourage all potential contributors to register with it. However, in the case that other registers become available you will be duly notified. A letter of recommendation from each author's organization should be provided with the contributed article to ensure the privacy and secrecy of research is protected.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations because rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for loss or damage to photographs and illustrations sustained during mailing.

Online submissions
Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182 office. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100316080002.htm) before attempting to submit online. For assistance, authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email describing the problem to wjh@wjgnet.com, or by telephone: +86-10-85381892. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. Repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with

ample margins. Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page

Title: Title should be less than 12 words.

Running title: A short running title of less than 6 words should be provided.

Authorship: Authorship credit should be in accordance with the standard proposed by International Committee of Medical Journal Editors, based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published. Authors should meet conditions 1, 2, and 3.

Institution: Author names should be given first, then the complete name of institution, city, province and postcode. For example, Xu-Chen Zhang, Li-Xin Mei, Department of Pathology, Chengde Medical College, Chengde 067000, Hebei Province, China. One author may be represented from two institutions, for example, George Sgourakis, Department of General, Visceral, and Transplantation Surgery, Essen 45122, Germany; George Sgourakis, 2nd Surgical Department, Korgialenio-Benakio Red Cross Hospital, Athens 15451, Greece

Author contributions: The format of this section should be: Author contributions: Wang CL and Liang L contributed equally to this work; Wang CL, Liang L, Fu JF, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM designed the research; Wang CL, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM performed the research; Xue JZ and Lu JR contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF analyzed the data; and Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF wrote the paper.

Supportive foundations: The complete name and number of supportive foundations should be provided, e.g., Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801

Correspondence to: Only one corresponding address should be provided. Author names should be given first, then author title, affiliation, the complete name of institution, city, postcode, province, country, and email. All the letters in the email should be in lower case. A space interval should be inserted between country name and email address. For example, Montgomery Bissell, MD, Professor of Medicine, Chief, Liver Center, Gastroenterology Division, University of California, Box 0538, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States. montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu

Telephone and fax: Telephone and fax should consist of +, country number, district number and telephone or fax number, e.g., Telephone: +86-10-85381892 Fax: +86-10-85381893

Peer reviewers: All articles received are subject to peer review. Normally, three experts are invited for each article. Decision for acceptance is made only when at least two experts recommend an article for publication. Reviewers for accepted manuscripts are acknowledged in each manuscript, and reviewers of articles which were not accepted will be acknowledged at the end of each issue. To ensure the quality of the articles published in *WJH*, reviewers of accepted manuscripts will be announced by publishing the name, title/position and institution of the reviewer in the footnote accompanying the printed article. For example, reviewers: Professor Jing-Yuan Fang, Shanghai Institute of Digestive Disease, Shanghai, Affiliated Renji Hospital, Medical Faculty, Shanghai Jiaotong University, Shanghai, China; Professor Xin-Wei Han, Department of Radiology, The First Affiliated Hospital, Zhengzhou University, Zhengzhou, Henan Province, China; and Professor Anren Kuang, Department of Nuclear Medicine, Huaxi Hospital, Sichuan University, Chengdu, Sichuan Province, China.

Abstract

There are unstructured abstracts (no less than 256 words) and structured abstracts (no less than 480). The specific requirements for structured abstracts are as follows:

An informative, structured abstracts of no less than 480 words should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts for original contributions should be structured into the following sections. AIM (no more than 20 words): Only the purpose should be included. Please write the aim as the form of "To investigate/study/…; MATERIALS AND METHODS (no less than 140 words); RESULTS (no less than 294 words): You should present *P* values where appropriate and must provide relevant data to illustrate how they were obtained, e.g. 6.92 ± 3.86 *vs* 3.61 ± 1.67, $P < 0.001$; CONCLUSION (no more than 26 words).

Key words

Please list 5-10 key words, selected mainly from *Index Medicus*, which reflect the content of the study.

Text

For articles of these sections, original articles, rapid communication and case reports, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the main text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both. The main text format of these sections, editorial, topic highlight, case report, letters to the editors, can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_list.htm.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. Detailed legends should not be provided under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Figures should be either Photoshop or Illustrator files (in tiff, eps, jpeg formats) at high-resolution. Examples can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4520.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4554.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4891.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4986.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4498.pdf. Keeping all elements compiled is necessary in line-art image. Scale bars should be used rather than magnification factors, with the length of the bar defined in the legend rather than on the bar itself. File names should identify the figure and panel. Avoid layering type directly over shaded or textured areas. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes in atrophic gastritis after treatment. A:...; B:...; C:...; D:...; E:...; F:...; G: …*etc.* It is our principle to publish high resolution-figures for the printed and E-versions.

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. Detailed legends should not be included under tables, but rather added into the text where applicable. The information should complement, but not duplicate the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$ should be noted ($P > 0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of *P* values, $^{c}P < 0.05$ and $^{d}P < 0.01$ are used. A third series of *P* values can be expressed as ^{e}P

< 0.05 and $^{f}P < 0.01$. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as ^{1}F, ^{2}F, ^{3}F; or sometimes as other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, *etc.*, in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscript and who endorse the data and conclusions should be included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should number the references in Arabic numerals according to the citation order in the text. Put reference numbers in square brackets in superscript at the end of citation content or after the cited author's name. For citation content which is part of the narration, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, "Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability[1,2]". If references are cited directly in the text, they should be put together within the text, for example, "From references[19,22-24], we know that..."

When the authors write the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in the references section, and also ensure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not list the same citation twice.

PMID and DOI

Pleased provide PubMed citation numbers to the reference list, e.g. PMID and DOI, which can be found at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/entrez?db=pubmed and http://www.crossref.org/SimpleTextQuery/, respectively. The numbers will be used in E-version of this journal.

Style for journal references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in boldfaced letters. The family name of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated first and middle initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). The title of the cited article and italicized journal title (journal title should be in its abbreviated form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.5396].

Style for book references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in boldfaced letters. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated middle and first initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

1 **Jung EM**, Clevert DA, Schreyer AG, Schmitt S, Rennert J, Kubale R, Feuerbach S, Jung F. Evaluation of quantitative contrast harmonic imaging to assess malignancy of liver tumors: A prospective controlled two-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6356-6364 [PMID: 18081224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6356]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; In press

Organization as author

4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462 PMCID:2516377 DOI:10.1161/01.HYP.0000035706.28494.09]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764 DOI:10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]

No author given

6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303 DOI:10.1136/bmj.325.7357.184]

Volume with supplement

7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325 DOI:10.1046/j.1526-4610.42.s2.7.x]

Issue with no volume

8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900 DOI:10.1097/00003086-200208000-00026]

No volume or issue

9 Outreach: Bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRSA Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wieczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ cell tumours Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

15 Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/index.htm

Patent (list all authors)

16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and positioning tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

Statistical data

Write as mean ± SD or mean ± SE.

Statistical expression

Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as υ (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

Units

Use SI units. For example: body mass, m (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, p (B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, t (incubation) = 96 h, blood glucose concentration, c (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, p (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 μg/L; CO_2 volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO_2, not 5% CO_2; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23 243 641.

The format for how to accurately write common units and quantums can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100107115140.htm.

Abbreviations

Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further explanation.

Italics

Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.
Genotypes: *gyrA*, *arg* 1, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*
Restriction enzymes: *Eco*RI, *Hin*dI, *Bam*HI, *Kbo* I, *Kpn* I, *etc.*
Biology: *H. pylori*, *E coli*, *etc.*

Examples for paper writing

Editorial: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100316080004.htm

Frontier: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100315103153.htm

Topic highlight: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100316080006.htm

Observation: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100107112630.htm

Guidelines for basic research: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100315103748.htm

Guidelines for clinical practice: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100315103829.htm

Review: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100107112834.htm

Original articles: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100107113351.htm

Brief articles: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100315104523.htm

Case report: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100107113649.htm

Letters to the editor: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/_info_20100107114003.htm

Book reviews: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100315105017.htm

Guidelines: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100315105107.htm

SUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS AFTER ACCEPTED

Please revise your article according to the revision policies of *WJH*. The revised version including manuscript and high-resolution image figures (if any) should be re-submitted online (http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182office/). The author should send the copyright transfer letter, responses to the reviewers, English language Grade B certificate (for non-native speakers of English) and final manuscript checklist to wjh@wjgnet.com.

Language evaluation

The language of a manuscript will be graded before it is sent for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing needed; and (4) Grade D: rejected. Revised articles should reach Grade A or B.

Copyright assignment form

Please download a Copyright assignment form from http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100107114726.htm.

Responses to reviewers

Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions provided by the reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100107114601.htm.

Proof of financial support

For paper supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the document and serial number of the foundation.

Links to documents related to the manuscript

WJH will be initiating a platform to promote dynamic interactions between the editors, peer reviewers, readers and authors. After a manuscript is published online, links to the PDF version of the submitted manuscript, the peer-reviewers' report and the revised manuscript will be put on-line. Readers can make comments on the peer reviewer's report, authors' responses to peer reviewers, and the revised manuscript. We hope that authors will benefit from this feedback and be able to revise the manuscript accordingly in a timely manner.

Science news releases

Authors of accepted manuscripts are suggested to write a science news item to promote their articles. The news will be released rapidly at EurekAlert/AAAS (http://www.eurekalert.org). The title for news items should be less than 90 characters; the summary should be less than 75 words; and main body less than 500 words. Science news items should be lawful, ethical, and strictly based on your original content with an attractive title and interesting pictures.

Publication fee

WJH is an international, peer-reviewed, Open-Access, online journal. Articles published by this journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license. Authors of accepted articles must pay a publication fee. The related standards are as follows. Publication fee: 1300 USD per article. Editorial, topic highlights, original articles, brief articles, book reviews and letters to the editor are published free of charge.